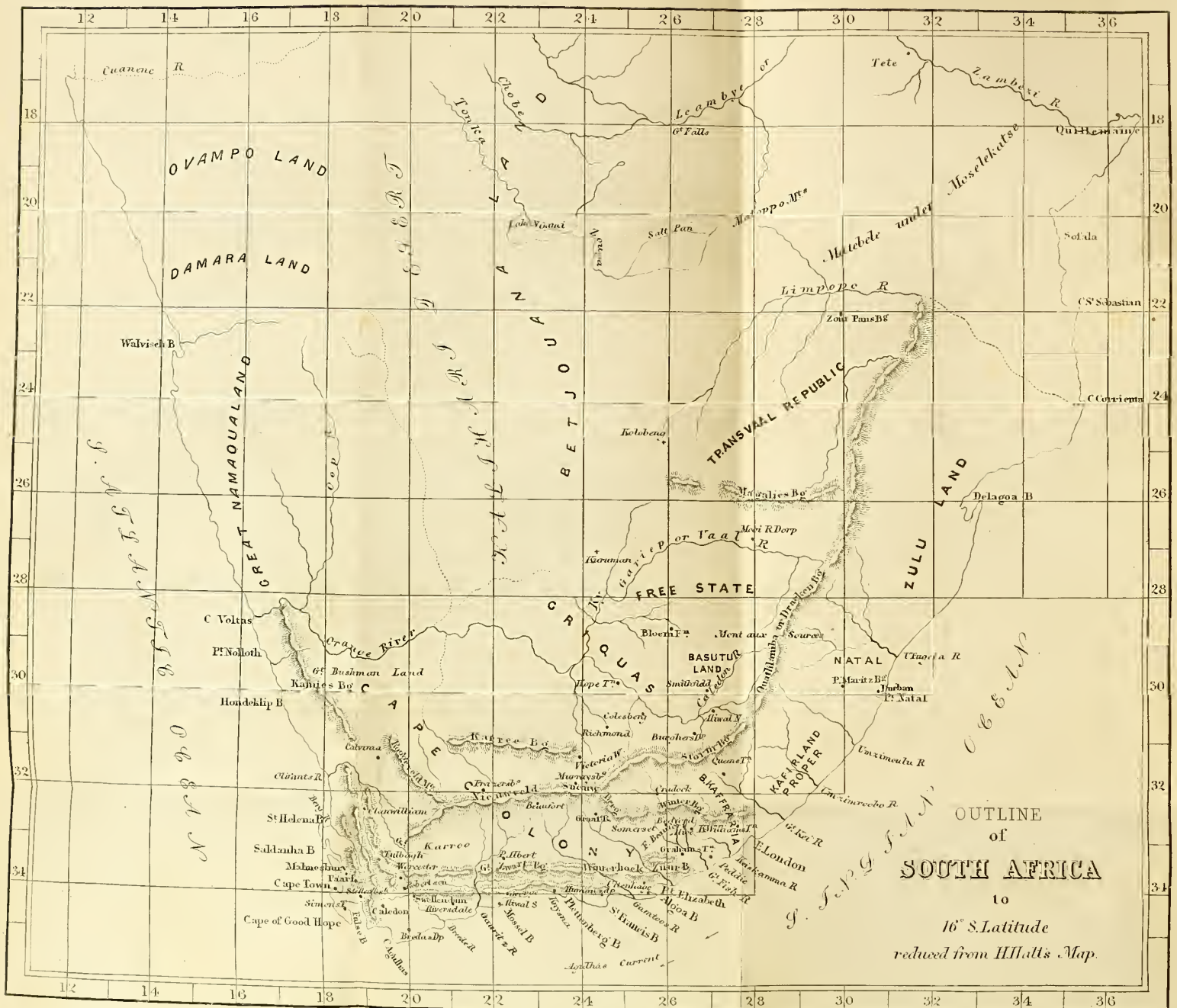
24ColorCard Camera Cro

ZPA (83)

BOUND BY
SAUL SOLOMON & Co
50 St George's St
CAPE TOWN.

3 OCT. 1941
MERENSKY-BIBLIOTEEK
UNIVERSITEIT VAN PRETORIA.
Klasnommer ZPA (83)
Registernommer 6 8235
HALL


OUTLINE
of
SOUTH AFRICA
to
16° S. Latitude
reduced from Hall's Map.
OVAMPO LAND
DAMARA LAND
GREAT NAMAQUALAND
BETJOUANA LAND
TRANSVAAL REPUBLIC
FREE STATE
CAPE COLONY
BASUTU LAND
NATAL
ZULU LAND
KAFFRARIA
Cuanene R
Chobe R
Tonka R
Zambesi R
Tete
Quilimane
Sofala
Limpopo R
Walvisch B
C Voltas
Pt Nolloth
Orange River
Kamies Bg
Houdeklip B
Hondeklip B
Saldanha B
St Helena Bg
Cape Town
Cape of Good Hope
Simons T
Caledon
Swellendam
Riversdale
Algoa B
St Francis B
Plettenberg B
Knysna
Mossel B
Beaufort
Graham T
Graaf Reinet
Somerset
Bathurst
Grahamstown
Port Elizabeth
East London
Kei R
Great Fish R
Keiskamma R
Buffalo R
Umzimvubu R
Umzimkulu R
Umtata R
Natal
Port Natal
Durban
Delagoa B
Inhambane
Sofala
Mozambique
Agulhas Current

MANUAL

OF

SOUTH AFRICAN GEOGRAPHY,

FORMING

A COMPANION TO THE MAP OF SOUTH AFRICA TO 16° SOUTH LATITUDE.

INTENDED FOR THE

USE OF THE UPPER CLASSES IN GOVERNMENT SCHOOLS, AND OF CANDIDATES FOR THE CIVIL SERVICE.

BY

HENRY HALL, F.R.G.S.

SECOND EDITION.

CAPE TOWN:
SAUL SOLOMON AND CO., STEAM PRINTING OFFICE.
1866.

[*The right of translation is reserved.*]

CAPE TOWN:

SAUL SOLOMON AND CO., STEAM PRINTING OFFICE,

49 AND 50, ST. GEORGE'S-STREET.

PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

The want of an elementary work on the geography of South Africa, for the use of schools and of candidates for the public service, being much felt, I undertook, at the request of the Honourable R. W. Rawson, Esq., Colonial Secretary, the compilation of a small work on the subject, to which, at the suggestion of Dr. Innes, the Superintendent-General of Education, have been added some chapters on the physical geography of the country, as tending to make the work more complete. In the Appendix, I have collected together whatever trustworthy data, in the shape of statistical, physical, and other tables, I could find available; and in a table of chronological events, the student may find an outline of the political history of South Africa, and of the progress of geographical discovery in it, which may serve as a guide to a deeper study of these, to Cape colonists, interesting subjects.

I hope, therefore, that this little manual, which has no claim to originality, and is founded rather on the labours of others, may be found to possess the merit of containing in a convenient and portable form, that information of the "land we live in" which is now only to be found scattered through the pages of various works not always accessible to young readers.

I would now beg to return my best thanks to all who have assisted me in this compilation; but I deem it my duty to express my particular obligations to Messrs. T. Maclear and C. Fairbridge, and Mr. Justice Watermeyer. Indeed, all to whom I applied for information have promptly afforded it.

HENRY HALL.

Royal Engineer Office, Imhoff,
Cape Town, 1st March 1859.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

FINDING that a new edition of the "Manual of South African Geography" is required, I have undertaken one, in which I have endeavoured to bring the subject down to the present date. In the interval of seven years which have elapsed since the first publication of the work, many important changes have taken place, both in the political and social state of South Africa.

HENRY HALL.

JUNE, 1866.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF SOUTH AFRICA.

CHAP.		PAGE
I.	INTRODUCTION	1
II.	SUBDIVISIONS	2
III.	OCEANS, BAYS, CAPES, ETC.	2
IV.	RIVERS AND LAKES	4
V.	MOUNTAINS AND HILLS	6
VI.	DESERTS AND KARROOS	8
VII.	FORESTS, ARABLE LANDS, ETC.	9
VIII.	NATURAL CURIOSITIES—GEOLOGY, ETC.	9
IX.	MANKIND OF SOUTH AFRICA	11
X.	RELIGIONS	13
XI.	GOVERNMENT...	13
XII.	ZOOLOGY	14
XIII.	NATURAL PRODUCTIONS	15
XIV.	CLIMATE, HEALTH OF INHABITANTS, ETC. ...	16

PART II.

DESCRIPTION OF DIVISIONS OF SOUTH AFRICA.

CHAP.		
I.	CAPE COLONY	17
II.	DESCRIPTION OF DIVISIONS OF CAPE COLONY.	
	WESTERN DIVISIONS	22
	EASTERN DIVISIONS	31

PART II—*(continued)*.

CHAP.		PAGE
III.	CHIEF CITIES AND TOWNS	39
IV.	HISTORY OF CAPE COLONY	41
V.	JUDICIAL AND OTHER INSTITUTIONS	42
VI.	PUBLIC WORKS—ROADS, ETC.	43
VII.	BRITISH KAFFRARIA	44
VIII.	NATAL	47
	BOER REPUBLICS:	
IX.	ORANGE FREE STATE	51
X.	TRANSVAAL REPUBLIC	54
	REGIONS INHABITED BY NATIVE TRIBES:	
XI.	KAFIRLAND PROPER, OR KAFFRARIA	57
XII.	REGIONS BEYOND NATAL, INHABITED BY KAFIR RACES	59
XIII.	GREAT NAMAQUALAND...	61
XIV.	KORANNAS AND BUSHMEN	64
XV.	GRIQUAS AND GRIQUALAND	65
XVI.	REGIONS INHABITED BY BETJOUANA TRIBES ...	67
XVII.	BASUTOLAND	71
XVIII.	DAMARA AND OVAMPOLAND	73
XIX.	KALIHARI DESERT	75
XX.	CONCLUDING REMARKS	77

PART III.

SKETCH OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY OF SOUTH AFRICA.

CHAP.		
I.	GENERAL OUTLINE OF SUBJECT	82
II.	FORM, DISTRIBUTION, ETC., OF THE LAND OF SOUTH AFRICA	84
III.	ELEVATED PLAINS, DESERTS, ETC.	88
IV.	EXPLANATION OF WATER-SHED LINE	89
V.	RIVERS	94
VI.	LAKES, SALT-PANS, ETC.	96
VII.	GEOLOGY	100
VIII.	HYDROLOGY	105
IX.	CLIMATE, ETC.	106
X.	FORM AND DISTRIBUTION OF ANIMAL AND VEGETABLE LIFE	116
XI.	DISTRIBUTION OF PLANTS—PHYTOGEOGRAPHY ...	125

APPENDIX.

NO.		PAGE
I.	TABLE OF GEOGRAPHICAL NOMENCLATURE ...	131
II.	HEIGHT OF PRINCIPAL MOUNTAINS	133
II A.	TABLE OF RIVERS	136
II B.	METEOROLOGICAL OBSERVATIONS	148
III.	TABLE OF CHRONOLOGICAL EVENTS	152
IV.	PUBLIC DEBT	183
V.	REVENUE AND EXPENDITURE	185
VI.	EXPORTS	185
VII.	FINANCIAL STATISTICS OF NATAL	187
VIII.	RAIN-FALL OF CAPE COLONY	188
IX.	METEOROLOGY OF NATAL	189
X.	DISTANCES FROM CAPE TOWN	191

MANUAL

OF

SOUTH AFRICAN GEOGRAPHY.

PART I.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF SOUTH AFRICA.

CHAPTER I.—INTRODUCTION.

1. The great continent of Africa is shaped like a vast triangle, with its vertex to the south, and is connected with Asia by a narrow sandy belt of desert, called the Isthmus of Suez, nearly in the same way as the Cape peninsula is connected with the rest of Africa by the sandy isthmus of the Cape Flats. In this part of Africa lie Egypt, and the classic shores of the Mediterranean; and all young readers of the Bible will recollect the exodus of the Jewish people from Africa, across the Red Sea, through the wilderness of Sinai, to the Holy Land.

2. Far away to the south, and five thousand miles distant from Egypt, the great continent of Africa comes nearly to a point. It is of the regions round this point, which form what is called South Africa, that this little book treats,—comprising all the countries south of the Tropic of Capricorn, and a belt of the region north of it to 16° of south latitude, or from where, in the valley of Zambezi, the Negro nations of Central Africa are

replaced by the Kafir, Betjouana, and Hottentot races, and further south, where descendants of our Dutch and English forefathers have founded the settlement of the Cape Colony, the Boer republics, and Natal.

CHAPTER II.—SUBDIVISIONS.*

3. The subdivisions of South Africa comprise—(1) British colonies ruled by the Queen of England: *a* Cape Colony, including British Kaffraria, *b* Natal, inhabited by descendants of European origin, chiefly speaking the English and Dutch languages; (2) Independent republics of emigrant Boers: *a* Orange Free State, *b* Transvaal Republic, speaking the Dutch language; (3) Kafirland, inhabited by tribes speaking the Kafir or Zulu language or its varieties: *a* between British Kaffraria and Natal, *b* east and north of Natal; (4) Betjouanaland, inhabited by various Betjouana tribes, speaking the Setjouana language and its dialects; (5) Basutuland, a mountain region between Orange Free State, Kafirland, and Natal, inhabited by Basutus and mixed tribes of Betjouana descent; (6) Griqualand, between Free State, Betjouanaland, and Cape Colony, inhabited by tribes of bastard Hottentots and Korannas; (7) Great Namaqualand, north of the Cape Colony, inhabited by tribes of Korannas, Bushmen, and Namaquas, speaking dialects of the Hottentot language, and extending west to the Atlantic Ocean and east to the Kalihari desert; (8) Damara and Ovampolaud, north of Namaqualand, inhabited by tribes speaking Ovampo dialects; (9) Portuguese colonies on the east coast, between Delagoa Bay and Quillimane.

CHAPTER III.—OCEANS, BAYS, CAPES, ISLANDS, AND COAST IN GENERAL.

4. The coast of South Africa on a large scale forms the truncated apex or point of a vast triangle, having its most southerly extremity in Cape Agulhas, latitude 34° 49′, longitude 20° 0′ 40″.

5. *Oceans.*—It is washed on the west side by the Southern Atlantic, and on the south and east by the Southern Indian Ocean.

* These subdivisions are not formed altogether by the physical features of the country, but are rather political and ethnological.

6. *Islands.*—No large islands are found near the coast of South Africa, but there are many small rocky islets. Going round the coast from the north-west to the north east, we find Ichaboe Island and Possession Islands, both off the coast of Great Namaqualand, famous for their guano deposits; Dassen Islands, between Table and Saldanha Bays; Robben Island, in Table Bay; St. Croix Islands (where Bartholomew Diaz first landed and planted the cross), and Bird Islands, in Algoa Bay; Basarouta Isle, off the east coast of Sofala. None of the islets off the coast of South Africa are inhabited

7. *Capes* —The principal capes are: north of Orange River, Point Pelican or Walvisch Bay, Damaraland; and, south of it, Point or Cape Voltas, near mouth of Orange River; Point Paternoster, near Saldanha Bay; Cape of Good Hope, south extreme end of Cape peninsula, and west extremity of False Bay; Cape Hangklip, east extremity of False Bay; Cape Agulhas, south point of African continent; Cape St. Blaize, west horn of Mossel Bay; Cape St Frances; Cape Recif, west point of Algoa Bay; Point Padrone, east point of Algoa Bay; Fish River Point, west of mouth of Great Fish River; Point Natal; Cape Calatto; Delagoa Bay.

8. *Peninsulas.*—The only well-marked peninsula in South Africa is the Cape peninsula, from Table Mountain to Cape Point.

9. *Bays.*—On the west coast, from north to south, are Walvisch Bay and Angra Pequina, coast of Great Namaqualand; Port Nolloth, south of Orange River; Hondeklip Bay; Donkin's Bay and Lambert's Bay, between Olifant's River and St. Helena Bay; St. Helena Bay; Saldanha Bay; Table Bay, the port of Cape Town and Western Province; Hout Bay. On the south and east coast—False Bay, including Simon's and Gordon's Bays, the first the principal naval station of the Colony; Walker's Bay; Struys Bay; St. Sebastian's Bay; Visch Bay; Vleesch Bay; Mossel Bay; Plettenberg Bay; St. Frances' Bay; Algoa Bay and Port Elizabeth, the port of the Eastern Province; Port Natal, the port of Natal Colony; Delagoa Bay; Sofala Bay Many of these bays are very open and exposed, and dangerous in certain seasons for the purposes of anchorage. Saldanha Bay is the largest and safest, but the surrounding country is, unfortunately, deficient in fresh water. Waterloo, Mazeppa, and Shepstone's Bays, on the east coast, are open roadsteads, unsheltered from the south-east winds.

10. *Coast Line.*—From Walvisch Bay, on the north-west coast, to Table Bay, the coast is generally low and sandy, except in

a few places where the mountains approach the coast; as in the neighbourhood of Saldanha Bay, &c. From Table Bay eastward, the coast is generally studded with sharp rocks, and bounded by chains of mountains which approach the coast, and form easily-distinguished landmarks. Far to the north-east are extensive flats, and a low, muddy tract along the shore, very unhealthy, extending from St. Lucia Bay to the Zambezi.

11. *Currents.*—A great current sets round the Cape coast from east to west, at the rate of about two and a half miles an hour, called the Agulhas current, from a bank or shoal so named, which extends to a distance of about sixty miles parallel to the south coast. North of this bank, between it and the coast, mariners can find bottom, or what is called soundings; south of it is deep water. Different minor currents, often running in a contrary direction, or from west to east, occur on many points of the coast.

12. *Light-houses.*—On the coast of South Africa there are light-houses at Mouille Point and Green Point, near Cape Town, and on Robben Island, Table Bay; on Cape Agulhas; Cape St. Blaize, Mossel Bay; Cape Recif; and the Bird Islands (Algoa Bay); also at the mouth of the Buffalo. One has been lately erected on the Roman Rock, in Simon's Bay, and another on Cape Point.

CHAPTER IV.—RIVERS AND LAKES.

13. The drainage of South Africa is effected by two systems of rivers,* the one running into the Atlantic, the other into the South Indian Ocean. The high ridge dividing the waters of these two river systems is called the water-shed line, and may be easily laid down by the pupil on any skeleton map of South Africa.

14. The principal rivers are (going from north-west to north-east round the Cape of Good Hope): *a* discharging into the Atlantic Ocean—The Cuanene or Nourse River, little known, draining Ovampoland; Zwakop River, draining Damaraland; the Orange or Gariep River, with its tributaries—the Vaal, Caledon, Kraai, Zeekoe, Hart, Malapo, Hartebeest, and Oup or Borradaile Rivers, draining a great part of the Cape Colony, Great Namaqualand, the Orange Free State, Basutuland, Betjouanaland, and the Kalihari desert, in all,

* A river system may be defined as the drainage of any large tract of the earth's surface, flowing in one direction from a common water-shed line.

about 400,000 square miles; Buffel's River, draining Little Namaqualand; Olifant's River, draining the Olifant's River valley and Bokkeveld Karroo, Hantam, &c.; Berg River, draining Malmesbury and Paarl districts; Zout River, draining Koeberg and Tigerberg, enters the sea near Cape Town. *b* Rivers running into Southern Ocean—Eerste River, into False Bay; Bot and Palmiet Rivers, east of Cape Hangklip; Breede River, and its tributary Zonderende River, draining Caledon and parts of Swellendam and Worcester divisions; Gauritz, including the Touw, Ghamka, Dwyka, and Olifant's Rivers, draining Great Karroo, Little Karroo, and Kammanassie, in the Worcester, Beaufort, and George divisions; Kromme River, entering the sea at St. Frances' Bay; Ghamtoos or Groote River, draining eastern Great Karroo and behind Sneeuwberg to near Richmond; Zwartkops, north of Port Elizabeth; Sunday's River, draining Sneeuwbergen, Bruintjes Hoogte, the Zwarteruggens, and Zuurberg; Bushman River; Kowie River, draining Lower Albany; Great Fish River, with its branches—the Kaga, Koonap, and Kat Rivers, draining Cradock, Somerset, Albany, and Fort Beaufort divisions; Keiskamma, Buffalo, draining British Kaffraria; Great Kei (the colonial boundary to the east), and its branches—the Cacadu, White Kei, Indwe, and Tsomo, draining British Kaffraria, Queen's Town, and part of Kaffraria Proper or Kafirland; the Bashee, Umtata, Umzimvobo, and Umzimculu, draining Kafirland, between British Kaffraria and Natal; the Umcomansi, Umgani, Utugela, and St. Lucia, draining Natal and the Zulu country; the Manici and Imhampoora, draining the country north of Delagoa Bay; the Limpopo, draining the Transvaal Republic and country north and east of the same, and the east edge of the Kalihari; the Sofala, on the east coast; the Zambezi, draining the immense country north of the tropic, including the country north-east and west of Lake N'Gami, explored by Livingstone, Andersson, and F. Green. Of all these rivers, almost the only navigable ones are the Breede and the Zambezi; the rest are nearly useless for commercial purposes, if we except the Kowie and Buffalo, where harbour works are now in progress, and the Knysna, in the division of George, which is a safe harbour for small vessels, but must be looked upon as a large lagoon rather than a river. The largest of these rivers, although it is beyond, or rather bounds, the limits of South Africa, is the Zambezi. The next in magnitude, and possessing the greatest interest to us, is the Orange River, and its great branches—the Vaal, Caledon, and Hart Rivers.

15. The only collection of fresh water, in South Africa, which has any pretension to the name of a lake, is Lake N'Gami, many hundred miles north of the frontier of the Cape Colony, discovered in 1846 by Dr. Livingstone and Mr. Oswell. There are many other extensive tracts of country covered with water after heavy rains, but in a few weeks they rapidly dry up and become encrusted with a coat of salt Among these, the principal is the Commissioner's Salt-pan, in Bushmanland, and De Beer's Vley, near the junction of the Brakke and Orange Rivers. There are many smaller salt-pans or lakes found in other parts of the Cape Colony, as Bethelsdorp pan and Coega pan, in Uitenhage, and Amsterdam pan in Cradock; and there are some considerable vleys or collections of water in the division of Caledon, near the coast. Far to the north of the Zambezi basin, many great inland seas or lakes exist, including the Shiri, 'Nyassi, &c., until we finally meet near the equator the Great Victoria Nyanza, out of which the Nile flows to the Mediterranean, and the Tanganyaki, which it is thought contributes another affluent to that great river.

CHAPTER V.—MOUNTAINS AND HILLS.

16. The mountain ranges of South Africa may be generally considered as running parallel to the coast, forming a series of steps or plateaux, rising one above the other, which, from their highest levels, subside gradually down to the basins of the great rivers which drain the interior; the coast face being generally the steepest and best-wooded. We may reckon three distinct and nearly parallel chains of mountains running through South Africa from north-west to north-east. Two of these chains lose themselves near the coast, the third continues to run north-east, as far as we know of the continent: (1) The great chain known by the names of the Kamiesberg, Roggeveld, Nieuweveld, Koudeveld, Sneeuwbergen, Stormbergen, Quathlamba, Maluti, and Drakensberg mountains, of which the Laputa mountains of the Zambezi are probably a continuation. (2) Nearer the coast, a parallel chain of less height, bounding the plateau of the Great Karroo, forms the Cold Bokkeveld and Cedar mountains, the Wittebergen, Little and Great Zwartebergen, Groote River mountains, Great Winterhoek, and Zuurbergen, gradually subsiding towards the coast near the mouth of the Great Fish River. (3) Next the

coast, at a distance varying from thirty to eight miles, run the Olifant's River mountains, the Drakenstein and Hottentot's Holland mountains, the Zonderende mountains, Langebergen, Outeniqua and Zitzikamma mountains, to Cape St. Frances, where the range subsides into the sea, at a still lower level than the first and second chains. At a high point of the first range (the Compassberg), in the Graaff-Reinet division, the mountains form a double loop, the southern arm of which, running from west to east, forms the Zwagershoek, Winterbergen, Amatola, and Matuana mountains, and so run parallel to the coast nearly to Natal, through Kafirland; the northern loop forms the Rhenosterbergen, Stormbergen, Quathlamba, &c., running as far to the north-east as we can trace. Beside these ranges are many parallel and isolated subordinate mountain chains and peaks: the principal are the Piketberg, north of Berg River; Tiger and Koeberg, Paarl, and Riebeek's Kasteel, near Cape Town; the Cape Peninsula mountains; the Paardeberg and Babylon's Tooren mountains, in Caledon division; the Kareebergen, north of the Nieuweveld; Kabiskow, on the border of Bushmanland; the Magalisberg, dividing the waters of the Orange River basin from those of the Limpopo, and various isolated groups of hills, many of which are of considerable height and fantastic forms,—as the Twee Tafelbergen, Theebusberg, &c. (Cradock district). The highest point is probably the Mount of Sources, at the junction of the Maluti and Drakensberg mountains, north-west angle of Natal, about 10,000 feet. From this point, a lofty range of peaks, called the Maluti, diverge and run in a direction from north-east to south-west, between the Caledon and principal branch of the Orange River. The average height of the first range may be estimated at 7,000 feet; the second at 5,000 feet; and the coast range at 4,000 feet The other highest summits are the Compassberg, near Graaff-Reinet, above 9,000 feet; Sneeuwkop, in the Cedar mountains, about 5,700 feet; the Great Winterberg, 7,800 feet; Table Mountain, near Cape Town, 3,582 feet; Winterhoek, above Tulbagh, 5,600 feet; Gaikaskop, near the Kat River Settlement, 6,800 feet; Great Winterhoek, near Uitenhage, 6,000 feet; and Hangklip, near Queen's Town, 6,800 feet. There are no active volcanoes, as far as is known, in South Africa. Pointed hills are locally called Spitzkops; flat-topped hills, like Table Mountain, Tafelbergs; Hangklips are peaks inclining to one side; and Toorenbergs are mountains like towers.—(*Vide* Geographical Nomenclature—Appendix.)

CHAPTER VI.—DESERTS AND KARROOS.

17. In South Africa are immense tracts of country devoid of water, and, except at certain seasons, nearly uninhabited. Those within the Colony are called karroos, from a Hottentot word, signifying dry. The principal deserts are: (1) The Kalihari or Great Desert, north of the Orange River, extending north nearly one thousand miles, and about three hundred miles in width between Great Namaqualand and the country of the Betjouanas. It is, in many places, a well-wooded and bushy country, but nearly devoid of water, except after thunderstorms. Its inhabitants are only a few wandering poor Betjouanas and Bushmen, who know the position of the existing wells, and subsist by capturing the smaller game, which in some places abound. No large mountains or rivers are found in the desert, but many low parallel ranges of hills and dry water-courses intersect it. (2) Bushmanland, south of the Orange River, is a sterile and desert tract, forming the northern parts of the Beaufort and Clanwilliam divisions, at an average height of three thousand feet above the sea, inhabited by a few wandering hordes of Koranas and Bushmen, and some migrating Boers and Bastards from the Hantam and Nieuweveld districts. By the formation of dams in the dry watercourses, this desert might, probably, in a few years, become habitable. The springs and waters now found are generally brackish; fine grass, however, abounds in certain seasons of the year. (3) The Great Karroo, lying between the Roggeveld, Nieuweveld, and Sneeuwbergen, on the north; and the Cold Bokkeveld mountains, and Wittebergen and Zwartebergen, on the south, about three hundred and fifty miles long, and seventy wide, and with an average height of 2,500 feet above the sea, is a sterile, waterless tract of country, although producing rich grasses after the periodical rains. The main road from Cape Town to Beaufort (West) crosses this karroo. (4) Nearly the whole of the west coast of Namaqualand, from Walvisch Bay to the Buffel's River, for thirty or forty miles inland, may be esteemed a sandy and waterless desert, where a drop of rain seldom falls. Generally, in all these deserts, rains are very uncertain, and often for many years never fall. The rivers shown on the maps are, therefore, for long periods, merely dry watercourses, and whatever little water is found, is generally brackish, and collected by digging in the bed of the river, the natural course of the drainage

of the country. In the Kalihari, the abundance of a succulent wild watermelon often proves a succedaneum for the want of water.

CHAPTER VII.—FORESTS, ARABLE LANDS, SHEEP-WALKS, ETC.

18. *Forests.*—Different in almost every character from the new world, South Africa presents but few extensive forests. Those that exist are generally found on the coast face of the mountain ranges, and increase in denseness as we travel eastwards. Considerable forests of a species of cedar are found in the Cedarberg, east of the town of Clanwilliam. From thence we find little wood till we reach the magnificent forests of the Outeniqua and Zitzikamma, in the George and Uitenhage divisions. Dense bush and large timber is found in the Addo Bush, Kat River mountains, Buffalo and Amatola mountains, along the coast of Kafirland and in Natal, generally increasing in size and value as we travel eastwards. In the Transvaal country also are large tracts of forests; and the Kalihari desert, although so dry, is described as in some parts densely wooded. Little timber, even for firewood, is found in the western and northern parts of the Cape Colony and Orange Free State, and the inhabitants often have recourse to the dung of cattle for fuel. A few remains of the primeval forests or "bosch" are found in the Western Province, at Hout Bay, behind Table Mountain, and in the ravines of the Zonderende and Langebergen.

19. *Arable Lands, Sheep-walks, &c.*—The arable lands of the Cape Colony extend from the Olifant's River, south, along the coast, and to the eastward, in all the well-watered valleys of the mountain ranges, and generally wherever water is abundant. The best sheep-walks are found in the central and north-eastern divisions. The vine is generally cultivated in the western divisions, where it is the principal staple. Cattle thrive best in the grassy plains of the Orange Free State and Betjouanaland. Along the course of the large rivers, dense belts of mimosas and willows are generally found.

CHAPTER VIII.—NATURAL CURIOSITIES—GEOLOGY.

20. *Natural Curiosities.*—The principal natural curiosities in South Africa are: the great falls of Aukrabies, on the Orange River, in the division of Calvinia; the great Victoria falls, in

the Zambezi, described by Dr. Livingstone, and also pictorially by Mr. T. Baines; the Cango caverns, in the George division, described by Lieut. Sheerwill; the great salt-pans of Utwetwe, in Betjouanaland, and the Commissioner's salt-pan in the district of Calvinia; and the falls of the Utugela and Umgani, in Natal. Hundreds of striking and curious mountain peaks, of every possible shape, are found universally scattered over the interior. The Great Karroo and Kalihari desert are worthy of a visit from every lover of nature in its most sterile and barren state, as even those dry and parched regions are not without a certain gloomy grandeur. Mineral springs, hot and cold, are found in several parts of the Colony.

21. *Geology.*—Of late years much attention has been paid to the elucidation of the geology of South Africa by the late A. G. Bain, Esq., Drs. Atherstone and Rubidge, A. Wiley, Esq., and others, and a geological map of the Cape Colony has been constructed by the first named of these gentlemen. We can here only give the merest sketch of a subject which is still but imperfectly known. The most generally received theory is, that the interior of the continent was once a vast fresh water lake (as is proved by the fossil remains of dicynodons and other reptiles), fringed round by the mountains of older formation, which form our coast mountain ranges. North of the Olifant's River extends, as far north as is known, along the west coast, a vast field of granite and gneiss, in which occur the copper formations, which are now being worked with great success in Little Namaqualand. In Table Mountain and the Cape division generally, we find the old clay slate formation, upheaved by protrusions of granite, on which again are deposited nearly horizontal beds of sandstone, as on Table Mountain and the Lion's Head. Indeed, a young geological student can hardly do better than carefully study and learn to understand the phenomena laid bare by nature before his eye a few hundred yards distant only from the South African College, where the junctions of the igneous and aqueous rocks are well defined. The coast regions are generally composed of sandstones, the representative, perhaps, of the old red sandstone of Europe; and from the Karroo north, Mr. Bain considers, to the tropics, are found nothing but beds of sandstone, and shales of lacustrine or fresh-water formation, intersected with dykes of igneous rocks and hills, nearly all topped with the same. The most interesting parts of the Colony for geological studies are Table Mountain, Bain's Kloof, the Zuurberg mountain in Uitenhage, Albany, and the Wittebergen in the Albert division.

CHAPTER IX.—MANKIND OF SOUTH AFRICA.

22. There are several distinct races of mankind inhabiting South Africa, divided into the great classes of white and coloured. The white races are: (1) *a* The Dutch or Batavian descendants of the original founders, in A.D. 1652, of the Cape Colony, and who constitute the greater part of the white population of it and the independent republics; *b* The English or Anglo-Saxon race, who have settled in the Cape Colony and Natal since they became British colonies, in A.D. 1795, 1806, 1843, and 1859 to 1863; *c* German or Teutonic, of whom a considerable number have lately arrived from Europe in the different German legions; *d* Descendants of French refugees who settled in the Colony after the revocation of the Edict of Nantes, in A.D. 1684, and who have, in lapse of years, become almost amalgamated with their Dutch brethren, but whose family names still enable their descent to be distinguished; *e* A few half-caste Portuguese, on the east coast. (2) The Hottentot races or tribes, with yellow or light olive skins, hair in little woolly tufts, and speaking various dialects of a language articulated with clicks, and distinct from any other known: *a* Hottentot proper, dispersed through the Colony and nearly extinct in the pure line; *b* Korannas, living on both sides of the Orange River; *c* Namaquas, inhabiting Great and Little Namaqualand; *d* Bosjesmans or Bushmen, scattered over the north part of Cape Colony and Kalihari desert, as far as explored; *e* Griquas, a bastard race of mixed blood, of Dutch fathers and Hottentot mothers, dwelling under independent chiefs, along the north bank of Orange River and south of Betjouanaland, and generally dispersed, under the name of Bastards, through the Colony. (3) Races speaking the Kafir language and its dialects: *a* Amakosa* Kafirs, including the Gaika, Slambie, Gonubi, and other tribes, living in British Kaffraria; *b* Amagaleka, living beyond Great Kei; *c* Amatembu, in east part of Queen's Town division and beyond the Indwe, in Kafirland Proper, commonly called Tambookies; *d* Amaponda, between the Bashee and Umzimculu; *e* Amabaxa, north and east of the latter; *f* Broken tribes of Zulu and Amalunga origin, living in the colony of Natal and on its west borders; *g* Amazulu, living east of Natal; *h* Amazwasi, living near Delagoa Bay; *i* Amalunga, north and east of Delagoa Bay; *k* Amatabile, to the far north, on the southern slope of

* The prefix Ama signifies people or tribe.

the basin of the Zambezi, under the chief Moselikatse; *l* Amafengu, the remains of broken Zulu tribes, once living in a state of slavery among the Kafirs, now dwelling as British subjects in the Cape Colony, and known by the appellation of Fingoes; *m* Ghonaquas, a mixed race of Kafirs and Hottentots, now dispersed through the frontier tribes. (4) Tribes speaking the Setjouana language and its dialects, including the Basutus, inhabiting the north-west valleys of the Maluti mountains; the Batclapis, Bamungwatas, Bakweins, Makololo, &c., living north and west of the Boer republics and the Vaal and Orange Rivers. The most powerful and influential of these tribes is the Basutus, under Moshesh. The Betjouana races extend north, as far as the Zambezi, where they gradually merge into the Negro. The Kalihari forms the western boundary of the country inhabited by these races. (5) Damara and Ovampo, speaking the Ovampo language, living north of Great Namaqualand. Their appearance and language is different from the other races, and probably they are of Negro descent. (6) Berg Damaras, a tribe of predatory Negroes, who now speak the Namaqua dialect, and who inhabit the most mountainous and inaccessible parts of Damaraland. Besides the above families of the human race, are found in South Africa, and principally in the western division, numerous descendants of Malay slaves, supposed to be of Javanese origin, professing the Mahommedan faith; and also a mixed population, composed of liberated Negroes from the east coast, Malagasches, &c.

23. *Character and Physical Appearance of Native Tribes.*—The Hottentots are a light-hearted, lazy, and indolent race, but still capable of improvement; excitable, and easily led to good or evil. They are of light, active make, generally below the middle size; of light olive complexion, and woolly hair in tufts. The Kafirs are more athletic and warlike, love a pastoral life, and prize cattle, not caring much for agricultural pursuits. They are generally a well-made, tall race, of a dark-brown colour, clean-limbed and active. The Betjouanas are more industrious, build better huts, cultivate more ground, work in metal, and generally show more ingenuity than the Kafirs. In physical appearance they resemble the latter, although of inferior physical energy. The Ovampo are a mild, peaceable, and pastoral people, with whom, however, we are not as yet much acquainted. The Griqua, Koranna, and Namaqua, all partake more or less of the Hottentot character, which, we are sorry to say, on the northern outskirts of the race in Great Namaqualand, is fast degenerating into

a species of brigandage. The Bushman may be represented as the very lowest type in the scale of civilization among the Hottentot races; and the Bakillihari, or poor Betjouana, is nearly the same among the latter nation. Of the white races it may be said that, unfavourable as are the circumstances in which many of them have for many years been placed, both as regards educational and social advantages, they have not, but with few exceptions, degenerated from the high scale of civilization which is the type of the Anglo-Saxon and Batavian races.

CHAPTER X.—RELIGIONS.

24. The majority of the Europeans in South Africa belong to the Dutch Reformed Church; but there are considerable numbers of Church of England, Wesleyan, Independent, and other reformed churches, besides numerous Roman Catholic Christians. In Cape Town and Port Elizabeth, the numerous Malays are nearly all Mahommedans, and possess mosques. The bulk of the Kafir, Betjouana, and Damara tribes are heathen, although numerous mission stations are formed amongst them, which are slowly, but surely, spreading the light of the gospel. The Bastard Hottentot races are generally familiar with the truths of Christianity. The Dutch Reformed Church, maintaining a Presbyterian form of government, adopts the parochial division; and the old parishes originally contained, many of them, thousands of square miles; but as the Colony is becoming more thickly inhabited, they are now frequently subdivided, the founding of a new church generally giving rise to a new village and parish. The English Episcopal Church is ruled by three bishops, namely, Capetown, Grahamstown, and Natal; the Roman Catholics have bishops in Cape Town and Graham's Town. The diocese of Cape Town formerly included the Island of St. Helena, but this is now a separate diocese; and there is also a bishop in the Free State, and one lately appointed for the Zambezi region.

CHAPTER XI.—GOVERNMENT.

25. The Cape Colony, now including British Kaffraria, is governed by a representative of Queen Victoria; a Legislative Council (consisting of twenty-one members, who are designated honourable, and presided over by the Chief Justice of the

Supreme Court); and a House of Assembly (consisting of sixty-six members). The members of both Houses are elected. No person holding anofficial situation under the Crown is allowed to be elected to either House, but four of the principal officers of Government have a seat, and can take part in the debates and discussions of either House; but they have no vote. The franchise or right of voting is on the most liberal scale, and perhaps no colony or country in the world can boast of a greater degree of constitutional freedom than is enjoyed by the Cape Colony.

26. The Orange Free State is a republic, ruled by an elected President and Council, but its constitution, as well as that of its sister republic, the Transvaal, is of too recent a formation to admit of any opinion as to its stability or advantages.

27. Natal has nearly the same kind of government as the Cape Colony, modified to meet the difference in the circumstances of the country.

28. The government of the native tribes is generally of a patriarchal character, under the rule of their chiefs, controlled by counsellors, either hereditary, or selected by the former. Among the Zulu tribes, at least, the power of the chief is often exercised in a most arbitrary and tyrannical manner.

CHAPTER XII.—ZOOLOGY, OR ANIMAL LIFE.

29. South Africa has always been celebrated for the variety of wild animals found in it, and although the larger kinds are now seldom found in the Cape Colony, yet, in the vast regions north of it, up to 16° of south latitude, the elephant, three kinds of the rhinoceros, the giraffe, hippopotamus or zeekoe, lion, leopard and panther, ostrich, all the large antelopes (some of the antelope tribe roam in countless numbers), and an immense variety of other animals, are still met with. A few elephants and buffaloes still exist in the Cape Colony, in the Zitzikamma, Addo, and Kowie forests, in the divisions of George, Uitenhage, and Albany. The gemsbok is still found in Bushmanland, and immense flocks of gnus, quaggas, and springboks still frequent the plains of Cradock and Colesberg. Ostriches are yet found in the plains of Zwartland, within fifty miles of Cape Town. Snakes are everywhere numerous; and in the Limpopo River crocodiles are numerous. On the coast is abundance of fish, and whales constantly frequent our bays during the breeding season. South Africa, generally, is favourable for the rearing of cattle, sheep, and horses, although

epidemic diseases often carry off large numbers of them; and, in the northern regions, a poisonous fly, called tsetse, kills all oxen and horses it bites, and thus renders travelling very difficult in many parts of these regions. Wolves, baboons, jackals, wild dogs, &c., everywhere abound; and wild pigs in many localities That fatal disease, hydrophobia, is unknown among the canine races of South Africa. Of birds, besides the ostrich, cagles of several varieties, vultures, paauws, pheasants, and partridges abound. Of insects, besides the tsetse, already mentioned, the locust is the most destructive. The camel, although abundant in North Africa, is not known here, although, he seems well adapted for the locality as well as climate in many parts, especially the sandy tracts along the coast in the Namaqualand, Piketberg, and Malmesbury divisions.

CHAPTER XIII.—NATURAL PRODUCTIONS—COMMERCE.

30. The Cape Colony produces and exports large quantities of wool, aloes, corn, wine, dried fruits, some medical herbs, timber for building and wagon purposes, horses, cattle, and sheep, hides, horns, goat and sheep skins, copper ore, tallow, argol. Tobacco and brandy are also produced in considerable quantities for home consumption. The Orange Free State produces wool, cattle, horses, sheep, skins of wild animals, tallow, &c. The Betjouana country, Damaraland, and Ovampoland, produce ivory, karosses, hides, skins of wild animals, sjamboks, and copper ore. Natal produces sugar, arrowroot, pine-apples, hides and skins, indigo and coffee in small quantities, ivory and natural curiosities. Hides, horns, and cattle are exported from Kaffraria.

31. The coasting trade of the Cape Colony, in the countries north and east of it, is constantly increasing, and employs a considerable number of vessels, including three steamers.

32. The internal traffic is principally carried on in bullock wagons, but the use of horse and mule trains has greatly increased wherever good roads have been constructed; and the introduction of railways is already commenced. (For the value of exports from South Africa, see Appendix). The principal shipping ports are Table Bay, Mossel Bay, Port Elizabeth, East London, and Port Natal. There is a naval establishment at Simon's Bay; and the trade of Port Beaufort is increasing. Considerable works are at present in execution

at the mouth of the Kowie River, in the division of Bathurst, Lower Albany, with every prospect of success; also at East London, the port of British Kaffraria. The natural advantages of the Knysna harbour have not yet been turned to account.

CHAPTER XIV.—CLIMATE, HEALTH OF INHABITANTS, ETC.

33. The climate of South Africa, south of the tropic of Capricorn, is generally healthy. The Cape Colony, Orange Free State, and Natal, particularly so. The coast districts enjoy, generally, moderate periodical rains; but the interior is very subject to intense drought, except in the vicinity of the high mountain ranges. Frost and snow are nearly unknown, except in the interior and on the high lands and mountain peaks. Thunderstorms in the northern and eastern parts are frequent and very violent. North of the Limpopo, the climate assumes more of a tropical character, and the coast north-east of Natal is very unhealthy. South of the Orange River, fever and other epidemics are nearly unknown, and the country is, perhaps, as healthy as any in the world. On the west coast the winter is generally the rainy season; in the eastern districts, it is the contrary. Very few marshes, or any regions engendering malaria, occur along the coast of the Cape Colony. Near Cape Town, thunderstorms are unfrequent, in comparison with the rest of the Colony. In the remote regions north of Lake N'Gami, and in the Zambezi country, the climate, partaking of a tropical character, is, in the hot season, very unhealthy, and even in the Transvaal republic, fevers often cut off many of the white inhabitants.

PART II.

DESCRIPTION OF DIVISIONS OF SOUTH AFRICA.

BRITISH COLONIES.

CHAPTER I.—CAPE COLONY.

34. The Cape Colony was originally founded by the Dutch, under Van Riebeek, about the year 1652; the Portuguese having before made an attempt at a settlement. It was at first but a very small patch of ground, between the Liesbeek River and Table Mountain, but when it was taken by the English, in 1796, it had extended east to the Great Fish River, and north along the great mountain range of the Roggeveld to the Sneeuwberg and Bamboosberg. In 1803, at the peace of Amiens, it was given up by the English, who occupied it again in 1806. Since that time the boundary has been extended north to the Orange River, and east to the Great Kei and Indwe, an area of about 350,000 square miles.

35. The boundaries of the Cape Colony are: The Orange River on the north and north-east, which divides it from Great Namaqualand, Griqualand, and the Free State Republic; on the east and north-east, the 'Tees, a small tributary of the Orange River, to its source, thence along the Stormbergen mountains, the Indwe and Great Kei Rivers, to the sea, which divide it from the Basutu territory and Kafirland; on the south, it is bounded by the Indian Ocean; on the west by the Atlantic.

36. The Cape Colony is generally considered as forming two sections, the Western and Eastern Districts, and contains the following electoral divisions, which are again subdivided for fiscal and magisterial purposes:

WESTERN DISTRICTS.

[Places marked *a* are seats of a civil commissioner or resident magistrate; and at those marked *b* a periodical court is held.]

Electoral Divisions.	Fiscal and Magisterial Divisions.	Chief Towns & Villages.
CAPE TOWN		*a* Cape Town. Green Point.
CAPE	Wynberg Simon's Town	*a* Cape Town. Papendorp. *b* Mowbray. Rondebosch. Newlands. Claremont. *a* Wynberg. Constantia. Kalk Bay. *a* Simon's Town. Kuils River. *b* D'Urban.
STELLENBOSCH	Stellenbosch	*a* Stellenbosch. *b* Somerset West. Eerste Rivier.
PAARL	Paarl	*a* Paarl. Wellington. Franschehoek.
MALMESBURY	Malmesbury	*a* Malmesbury. *b* Darling. *b* Hopefield. *b* St. Helena Bay. Riebeeks Kasteel. Groenekloof.
PIKETBERG	Piketberg	*a* Piketberg. Goedverwacht.
CLANWILLIAM	Clanwilliam Calvinia (Div.)	*a* Clanwilliam. *a* Calvinia.
NAMAQUALAND	Namaqualand Hondeklip Bay	*a* Springbokfontein. *a* Hondeklip Bay. Port Nolloth. Leliefontein.
WORCESTER	Worcester Tulbagh (Div.)	*a* Worcester. *a* Tulbagh. *b* Ceres. Steinthal.
VICTORIA WEST	Victoria West Frasersburg (Div.)	*a* Victoria West. *b* Schietfontein. *a* Frasersburg. Sutherland.
BEAUFORT	Beaufort Prince Albert (Div.)	*a* Beaufort. *a* Prince Albert. Willowmore.

Electoral Divisions.	Fiscal and Magisterial Divisions.	Chief Towns & Villages.
CALEDON	Caledon Bredasdorp (Div.)	*a* Caledon. *b* Genadendal. Villiersdorp. Greyton. *a* Bredasdorp. Elim. Napier.
SWELLENDAM	Swellendam Robertson (Div.)	*a* Swellendam. *b* Heidelberg. *b* Zuurbraak. *b* Malagas. Port Beaufort. *a* Robertson. *b* Montagu. Ladigrey.
RIVERSDALE	Riversdale	*a* Riversdale. *b* Ladismith. Amalienstein.
GEORGE	George Mossel Bay (Div.) Knysna (Div.)	*a* George. Blanco. Hopedale. Schoonberg. Pacaltsdorp. Lyon. Aliwal (South). Plettenberg's Bay. *a* Melville. Belvidere. Newhaven. Redbourne.
OUDTSHOORN	Oudtshoorn	*a* Oudtshoorn. Calitzdorp. Cango.

EASTERN DISTRICTS.

UITENHAGE	Uitenhage Humansdorp (Div.) Alexandria (Div.)	*a* Uitenhage. Jansenville. *a* Humansdorp. Hankey. Alexandria.
PORT ELIZABETH	Port Elizabeth	*a* Port Elizabeth.
GRAHAM'S TOWN		*a* Graham's Town.
ALBANY	Albany Bathurst (Div.)	*a* Graham's Town. *b* Salem. Sidbury. Riebeek. *a* Bathurst Port Frances. *b* Port Alfred.

Electoral Divisions.	Fiscal and Magisterial Divisions.	Chief Towns & Villages.
Victoria East	Victoria East Peddie (Div.)	*a* Alice. Aberdeen. *a* Peddie.
Fort Beaufort	Fort Beaufort Stockenstrom	*a* Fort Beaufort. *b* Post Retief. Adelaide. Heald Town. *a* Eland's Post (Seymour) Hertzog. Balfour. Philipton.
Somerset	Somerset Bedford (Div.)	*a* Somerset. *b* Groote Vlakte. *b* Been Leegte. Pearston. *a* Bedford. Glenlynden.
Cradock	Cradock	*a* Cradock. Tarkastadt.
Graaff-Reinet	Graaff-Reinet Murraysburg (Div.)	*a* Graaff-Reinet. *b* Aberdeen. *a* Murraysburg.
Richmond	Richmond Hope Town (Div.)	*a* Richmond. *a* Hope Town.
Colesberg	Colesberg Middelburg (Div.)	*a* Colesberg. *b* Hanover. *a* Middelburg.
Albert	Albert	*a* Burghersdorp.
Aliwal North	Aliwal North	*a* Aliwal North. Dordrecht. Ladigrey.
Queen's Town	Queen's Town	*a* Queen's Town. *b* Whittlesea.
King William's Town	King William's Town	*a* King William's Town.
East London	East London	*a* East London.

(The Western Districts return eleven members to the Legislative Council, and the Eastern ten members. Each of the electoral divisions returns two members to the House of Assembly, except the city of Cape Town, which returns four. Piketberg, Namaqualand, Victoria West, Riversdale, and Oudtshoorn, in the West, and Richmond, Aliwal North, and Queen's Town, together with King William's Town and East London (formerly constituting British Kaffraria), in the East, now assume the rank of electoral divisions, by virtue of Act No. 3 of 1865 of the Colonial Parliament.)

37. The population of the Cape Colony, according to the census of 1865, numbers 496,381 souls, consisting of:

White or European	181,592
Hottentot	81,598
Kafir	100,536
Other coloured	132,655
Total	496,381

Since that census, the annexation of British Kaffraria has added,

White or European	8,183
Coloured	78,018
Total	86,201
Total population of present Colony	582,582

38. The general character of the Cape Colony is mountainous; the chains running nearly parallel to the coast and to each other. Large elevated flats and plateaux, however, occur on the north and east, and many tracts near the coast have an undulating character. Single detached mountains are found everywhere dotting the extensive plains of the interior.

39. The climate of the Cape, as has been shown, is temperate and healthy, and very favourable for European habits and constitutions.

40. The only available or known mineral wealth are the large deposits of copper, lately worked, in Namaqualand, from which, in the year 1864, 4,323 tons of copper ore were obtained, valued at £122,602.

41. No manufactories of any importance, except flour, exist, the country being chiefly a pastoral and agricultural one. Of the great staple articles of wool and wine, exported from the Cape Colony* in the year 1864, the quantity of the former was 36,296,698 lbs., valued at £1,865,703, and of the latter 178,094 gallons, valued at £26,540.

* Exclusive of British Kaffraria.

CHAPTER II.—DESCRIPTION OF THE DIVISIONS OF CAPE COLONY.

WESTERN DIVISIONS.

42. Cape *(electoral division)*: Cape, Simon's Town, and Wynberg *(magisterial districts)*.—The Cape division lies south of Malmesbury, and includes Tigerberg and Koeberg, the sandy flats between them and False Bay, and the Cape peninsula, an area of about 700 square miles. On the hills and in the rich valleys of the Koeberg are many valuable corn-producing farms, and the wines of Constantia have a world-wide renown. The capital of the Colony stands on the shores of Table Bay, in this division (see Chief Towns). Simon's Town is a naval station, and contains an extensive naval yard, barracks, &c. Wynberg, Rondebosch, and Mowbray are all populous villages on the road between Cape Town and Simon's Town. D'Urban is a village on the east flank of the Tigerberg. Kalk Bay, once a mere fishing station, has become a much-frequented bathing place. The products of the Cape division are wine, corn, fruit, vegetables, and considerable quantities of fish. The population of this division, exclusive of Cape Town, Green Point, and Robben Island, amounts to 9,748 white, and 10,493 coloured inhabitants. A railway is completed from Cape Town to Stellenbosch and Wellington.

43. Stellenbosch and Paarl *(electoral and fiscal divisions)* are situated between the Cape division and the first mountain range, and as their extent is small, and physical features and products similar, they may be described together. The former is watered by the Berg, the latter by the Eerste River; and the Simonsberg, an offshoot of the Hottentot's Holland mountains, forms the boundary between them. Both are similar in their productions, being the most important wine districts in the Colony. Fruits of every kind are grown in abundance; corn, vegetables, &c. These divisions, forming the old Stellenbosch district, were first settled by French refugees, who arrived in this country after the revocation of the Edict of Nantes, in 1684. The towns in the Paarl division are the Paarl, at the foot of the mountain of that name, the seat of the civil commissioner, and Wellington, a thriving village about seven miles north-east of it, at the foot of Bain's Kloof, through which an excellent road leads over the Berg River mountains into the interior.

44. In the Stellenbosch division are, Stellenbosch (the chief town of the division), a romantic and beautiful town, about 24

miles east of Cape Town; and Somerset West, a thriving village on the main road from Cape Town to Graham's Town, *viâ* Sir Lowry's Pass, a favourite resort of invalids, owing to its proximity to the sea near the head of False Bay. The area of the division of the Paarl may be computed at about 900 square miles, and that of Stellenbosch about 600. They are the smallest but most densely populated rural divisions of the Cape Colony,—the Paarl containing 6,304 white, and 9,279 coloured inhabitants, and Stellenbosch, 2,712 white, and 6,205 coloured inhabitants.

45. The romantic valleys of Drakenstein, Jehosaphat's Dal, and Wagonmakers Valley, in the latter, and the country called Hottentots' Holland, in the former, are situated in these divisions; also the valley and mountain pass of Franschehoek, through which a road leads into the valley of the Breede River, across the Franschehoek mountains, a lofty range which, under the names of Hottentots' Holland and Drakenstein mountains, extends from Cape Hangklip north till it joins the Olifant's River range.

46. Malmesbury and Piketberg *(electoral and fiscal divisions)* lie south of Clanwilliam, and north of the Cape division; Malmesbury being south of the Berg River, and Piketberg north of it, having together an area of about 8,000 square miles. They are fertile in corn and wine. The only river is the Berg, and its branches,—the Twenty-four and Zout Rivers. In the Malmesbury division are Saldanha and St. Helena Bays. The town of Malmesbury is about 45 miles north of Cape Town, and has several good houses and a large church. The other villages are Hopefield, on the head of the Zout River, about 20 miles east of Saldanha Bay; and Darling, a few miles north of the Moravian mission station of Mamre, in the Groenekloof. In the division of Piketberg are the town of that name, and Goedverwacht, a missionary village on the south point of the Piketberg.

47. The products of Malmesbury and Piketberg are corn, horses, mules, dried fish, fruit, and wine. Excellent medicinal hot springs are found in the town of Malmesbury, and a new church and village have been recently built at Riebeeks Kasteel, a few miles east of it.

48. The principal mountains are Piketberg, north of the Berg River; Patrysberg, north of Saldanha Bay; Riebeeks Kasteel, an isolated hill west of Berg River; and Honingberg, on the east bank of the same. Near the coast is an extensive sandy plain. A new line of road through Pikenier's Kloof, a

pass in the mountain range west of the Olifant's River Valley, leading from Malmesbury to the town of Clanwilliam, was completed during the year 1858. The division of Malmesbury contains a population of 6,514 white and 8,058 coloured inhabitants; that of Piketberg 3,174 whit , and 2,903 coloured; total, 9,688 white and 10,961 coloured. The Moravian mission station at Groenckloof is one of the most flourishing institutions of the kind in the Cape Colony.

49. Clanwilliam *(electoral division)*: Clanwilliam and Calvinia *(fiscal divisions)*.—Clanwilliam, in 1857, owing to its immense extent, was separated into three divisions, for fiscal and magisterial purposes: Clanwilliam south, Namaqualand north, and Calvinia north-east. These three divisions comprise an area of not less than 60,000 square miles, the greater part of which is a rugged, barren desert. They are drained by the Olifant's River, and its branches—the Doorn, Holle, &c., by the Buffel's and Groen Rivers, &c., and the Great Orange River, forming the northern boundary, none of which are navigable; and, except the Orange and Olifant's, seldom flow, being mercly dry channels. The town of Clanwilliam is on the Jau Dissel's River, a feeder of the Olifant's River, near the western foot of the Cedar mountains, among which, at Wupperthal, is a Rhenish mission station.

50. Calvinia is a small village in the Hantam, a high and rather fertile country, separating the Great Karroo from Bushmanland; and the division of Calvinia extends north to the Orange River, comprising an immense extent of barren country.

51. Namaqualand *(electoral and fiscal division)*.—Springbokfontein, the property of a private mercantile firm, is the chief place in the mining districts in this division. The tract of land north of the Olifant's River, to the south slope of the Kamiesberg, is called Hardeveld, on account of the barreu aud rocky nature of the soil.

The most fertile part of these three divisions is the valley of the Olifant's River, which is bounded on each side by a lofty chain of mountains, in the narrow valleys between which large alluvial tracts, very fertile, are found, especially when flooded by the raiu. Celebrated medicinal hot springs are found near the foot of Pikenier's Kloof in this valley.

52. On the Kamiesbergen (5,300 feet), in the Namaqualand division, is a Wesleyan mission station (Leliefontein); and on the Olifant's River, at Ebenezer, is a statiou of the Rhenish missionaries. At Kommagaas, Kokfontein, and Richterfeld, in Namaqualand, are also stations of the latter society.

53. The Orange River forms the whole northern boundary of these divisions, and the ocean the west. On the east and south are the divisions of Beaufort, Tulbagh, and Malmesbury. The Kamiesbergen, Cedar and Bokkeveldbergen, Kradouw, Hantam, and Koperbergen are the principal mountains; but the whole surface, except the high plains of Bushmanland, is very rugged, especially in the neighbourhood of the Orange River.

54. In Namaqualand and Calvinia are still found a few of the original Hottentot races, recognizing a native chief or leader, and wandering with their flocks along the banks of the Orange River. The population of these divisions is as follows:

	White or European.	Hottentots.	Kafirs.	Other coloured.	
Clanwilliam	2,231	3,991	30	789	
Namaqualand	1,882	5,019	320	2,850	
Calvinia	2,232	3,687	265	2,337	
Amounting to	6,245	12,697	615	5,976	Total 25,533

The products of the division are copper ore from Little Namaqualand, corn from the Zandveld, south of Olifant's River, and cattle and horses, with a few ostrich feathers, from Hantam. The shipping places are Port Nolloth, Hondeklip, Donkin's, and Lambert's Bays,—anchorages all exposed to north-west gales.

55. Worcester *(electoral division)*: Worcester and Tulbagh *(fiscal divisions)*.—The divisions of Worcester and Tulbagh form an electoral division, and include a very large tract of country, a great proportion of which is either barren mountain or is included in the Great Karroo. These divisions lie behind the coast range of mountains, which divide them from the Paarl and Malmesbury divisions, and include zones or belts of country rising in regular steps between the first and third mountain ranges, and so possess a great variety of climate. The Breede and Little Berg River valleys, in which the towns of Worcester and Tulbagh are situated, formerly called Roodesand, are much higher than that of the Berg River, and produce corn, fruit, and wine in abundance. Higher still, lies the Warm Bokkeveld, a basin surrounded by high hills, and above that the Alpine regions of the Cold Bokkeveld, from which we descend into the Great Karroo. Crossing the Karroo, we ascend to the Little Roggeveld, also a high region, and to the Middle Roggeveld, higher still, from whence the country begins to slope towards the Orange River. Nearly three fourths of

the divisions of Worcester and Tulbagh consist of barren Karroo country; but the Breede River valley, including the Goudine, and Bosjesveld, Tulbagh basin, Warm and Cold Bokkeveld, and Hex River valley, are as fertile as any part of the Colony.

56. Worcester and Tulbagh produce much corn, dried fruits, and wine. The European fruits, such as cherries, currants, &c., come to great perfection in the Cold Bokkeveld; cattle and horses thrive well in the Middle Roggeveld. The Dwyka River separates Worcester from the division of Beaufort, and the Little Zwarteberg divides it from that of Swellendam and Riversdale; and on the north, the Cold Bokkeveld mountains, and a line across the Great Karroo, separate Tulbagh from Clanwilliam and Calvinia. The Goudine, near Worcester, produces excellent raisins, and has some celebrated hot baths. The high road from Cape Town to the Free State, *viâ* Karroo Poort, traverses these divisions, passing the Bain's Kloof and Mitchell's Pass, excellent mountain roads, made by the Colonial Government, and through Ceres, a rising village at the entrance of the Warm Bokkeveld.

57. The town of Worcester stands on the Hex River, near its junction with the Breede. Tulbagh stands in a romantic mountain basin, near the sources of the Little Berg River, at the foot of the Witsemberg, about twelve miles north of the entrance to Mitchell's Pass. There are mission stations of the Rhenish Society at Saron and Steinthal, in the Tulbagh division. The village of Ceres is situated at the entrance of the Warm Bokkeveld, on the main road to the interior, and contains (1866) 781 inhabitants. The area of the Worcester division is about 20,000 square miles; that of Tulbagh about 7,500. Tulbagh forms the northern part of the electoral division, and Worcester the southern. The former has a population of 3,259 white and 5,436 coloured inhabitants, the latter 3,159 white and 4,545 coloured. The highest mountain in this direction is the Winterhoek, which separates the Olifant's River valley from Tulbagh basin, and forms a striking feature in the mountain panorama visible from Cape Town.

58. Victoria West *(electoral division)*: Victoria West and Frasersburg *(fiscal divisions)*, recently detached from the old Beaufort division; the former north-east, the latter west. Two mission stations, Schietfontein in the one, and Amandelboom in the other, have been established by the Rhenish Society, north of the Nieuwveldt mountains, on a branch of the Zak Rivier,

for the benefit of the Bastard races dispersed over the desert region towards the north. Population:

	White.	Coloured.		
Victoria West	3,387	5,269	=	8,656
Frasersburg	2,949	5,344	=	8,293
			Total	16,949

59. Beaufort *(electoral division)*: Beaufort and Prince Albert *(fiscal divisions)*.—This and the region referred to in paragraph 58, constitute the original Beaufort division, and include an immense tract of country, containing upwards of 60,000 square miles, bounded on the north by the Orange River; on the south by the Zwartebergen, separating it from George; on the west by the Hartebeest and Dwyka Rivers, separating it from Clanwilliam, Calvinia, and Worcester; and on the east by the divisions of Colesberg, Richmond, and Graaff-Reinet.

60. These divisions present several distinct zones or belts of country from south to north. Along the foot of Zwarteberg, forming the division of Prince Albert, is a fertile and well-watered region. North of it is a broad belt of barren karroo, stretching away to the foot of the Nieuweveld mountains, called the Gouph. Thence extends a broad belt of mountains, well fitted for agricultural purposes, at the foot of which is the town of Beaufort. From the top of these mountains, the Nieuweveld extends away north to the Kareebergen, a long chain of flat-topped mountains, which traverses the country from west to east, about sixty miles north of the Nieuweveld. North of these mountains lies a barren desert tract, badly watered, and reaching to the Orange River, inhabited by a few wandering Bastards and Bushmen. These regions comprehend a tract of country nearly as large as the European kingdoms of Portugal, Denmark, Belgium, and Saxony together.

61. The rivers are mostly periodical, and the principal are the Gamka and its branches, forming, after they penetrate the Zwarteberg range, the Gauritz, and running into the South Indian Ocean, draining the Great Karroo; and the Zak River, and some other periodical streams, north of the Nieuweveld, which form the Hartebeest River, a tributary of the Orange River; the crest of the Nieuweveld forming the water-shed between the two systems of rivers.

62. Beaufort and Prince Albert, with towns of the same names (that of Prince Albert being in the Nieuweveld, near the boundary of the Worcester division), contain:

	White.	Coloured.		
Beaufort	2,623	3,205	=	5,828
Prince Albert	3,336	2,647	=	5,983
		Total		11,811

63. The principal produce of this part of the Colony is wool and a few ostrich feathers. The country, although generally barren, is well adapted for sheep farms and breeding of cattle.

64. Caledon *(electoral division)*: Caledon and Bredasdorp *(fiscal divisions)*.—Caledon and Bredasdorp are situated behind the first mountain range, and comprehend the country between the ridge of the Zonder Ende mountains on the north, and the South Indian Ocean on the south. On the east, an imaginary line divides these divisions from that of Swellendam. The country is generally undulating, with ranges of mountains parallel to the coast running through it. Near the coast are several large vleys or collections of water. The Zonder Ende, running from west to east along the foot of the mountains of the same name, is the principal river. Wool is the chief staple of this division; the horses and mules are also very good. A large Moravian mission station, called Genadendal, the first founded in South Africa, is situated in a valley north of the Zonder Ende River, in this division; and Elim is another station of the same society, near the coast, in Bredasdorp division. The town of Caledon lies at the foot of the Zwarteberg, celebrated for its hot baths. The other villages are Villersdorp, in Caledon division, and Bredasdorp and Napier in Bredasdorp division. The probable area of these divisions is 5,000 square miles, and contains a population of 4,517 white, and 5,383 coloured for Caledon, = 8,900; 2,020 white, and 2,149 coloured for Bredasdorp, = 4,169.

65. The most southern point of South Africa, Cape Agulhas, is situated in the division of Bredasdorp, in latitude 34° 49′ south, longitude 20° 0′ 40″ east, on which is erected a light-house, visible at the distance of six leagues. Danger Point and Gunner's Quoin are well-known landmarks on this part of the coast, and Babylon's Tooren is a lofty and remarkable mountain.

66. Swellendam *(electoral division)*: Swellendam and Robertson *(fiscal divisions)*.—This division, together with that

mentioned in paragraph 67, comprises the whole of the country between the Breede and Gouritz Rivers, as well as a large tract on the right bank of the former river, bounded by the Caledon division. They are traversed from west to east by two chains of mountains,—the southern called the Langeberg, and the northern (which separates it from Worcester and the Karroo), the Little Zwarteberg and Anysberg; and may be physically divided into the coast region and undulating grassy country between the mountains and the sea, called the Ruggens, and Kannaland, a dry karroo tract between the two mountain ranges of the Lange and Zwarteberg. The towns in the Swellendam division are Swellendam, founded in 1745, about four miles east of the Breede River; Malagas, on the Breede River; and Heidelberg. Zuurbrak is a large missionary station, a few miles from Swellendam. Produce, to a considerable extent, is shipped from the mouth of the Breede River, at Port Beaufort, where there is a custom-house; and an increasing import trade is carried on at the same place. In Robertson division are Robertson, a village and church near the Breede River, about half-way between Swellendam and Worcester, in a rich and fertile district; and Montagu, a new and thriving village at the head of a pass leading from the first range of mountains into the country above it. Swellendam, Riversdale, and Robertson grow large quantities of wool, and produce an excellent breed of horses. The area of this electoral division and the following one is about 9,500 square miles.

	White.	Coloured.		
Population of Swellendam	4,757	5,207	=	9,964
Do. Robertson	3,741	2,414	=	6,155
			Total	16,119

A difficult pass, called Seven Weeks Poort (near Ladismith), forms the only communication between the Great Karroo and these divisions. Platte Kloof and Cogman's Kloof are mountain passes in the Langeberg, which could be improved by a small outlay. The Tradouw Kloof, near Zuurbrak, may be also mentioned.

67. Riversdale *(electoral and fiscal division)* is separated from George by the Gauritz River on the east, and from Swellendam by the Duivenhok on the west. It contains the town of Riversdale on the Vet River, and Ladismith at the foot of the Little Zwarteberg, in a remote part of Kannaland,

near the Gauritz; also a missionary station, named Zoar, in its neighbourhood.

	White.	Coloured.	
Population	5,974	4,691	= 10,665

68. George *(electoral division):* George, Mossel Bay, and Knysna *(fiscal divisions).*—The electoral division of George, formed in 1811, was, in 1858, subdivided into the divisions of Oudtshoorn, Aliwal (South), George, and Knysna, which are bounded on the west by the Gauritz River, on the Riversdale side; on the north by the Great Zwarteberg, on the Beaufort side; on the south by the ocean; and on the east by a line from Antonie's Kop to Pic Formosa, on the eastern shore of Plettenberg Bay, on the Uitenhage side. This country may be described as a series of narrow valleys, lying between the coast and the Great Zwarteberg range. The mountain ranges which divide them run nearly in straight lines from west to east, and the ranges and valleys formed like steps, from the coast upwards to the foot of the Great Zwartebergen. The tract of country between the sea and first chain of mountains is generally densely wooded near the foot of the mountains. Behind the first range is the long and narrow valley of the Langekloof, through which runs the high road from Cape Town to the frontier. North of this, the Kammanassie mountains divide the Langekloof from the valley of the Olifant's River.

69. The principal rivers are the Gauritz and its tributary, the Olifant's River, which water a very fertile country. Many torrents of inconsiderable size and short course intersect the coast line, rendering travelling along it difficult.

70. Owing to the general run of the mountains here, the roads leading from west to east are generally good and easy of access; those from north to south, having to cross many ranges of high mountains, are very difficult and steep, unless where artificial passes have been formed, as at Meiring's Poort, in the Zwarteberg, and Cradock Kloof, now Montagu Pass, in the Outeniqua Mountains.

71. This region possesses two or three zones or belts of climate. Next the coast are grassy tracts, affording fine pastures, and agricultural farms, and also dense woods, producing valuable timber. In Langekloof the farms are generally agricultural; and along the Olifant's River is, perhaps, as rich a tract of country as any in South Africa, producing wine, brandy, dried fruits, &c., in abundance, and from which the principal supply of the frontier in these articles is drawn.

72. The towns and villages in the George division are, George, the seat of the civil commissioner, situated near the foot of the Outeniqua mountains, about six miles distant from the coast; Blanco, a village four or five miles north-west of it, at the foot of Montagu Pass; and Pacaltsdorp, near George, and Avontuur, in Langekloof, mission stations of the London Society. The chief town of Mossel Bay division is Aliwal South, the port of these divisions. In Knysna are Belvidere, Melville, and Newhaven, villages on the Knysna Lake.

73. This country is traversed from west to east by the road from Cape Town to the frontier, which passes over Montagu Pass. It produces corn, wine, brandy, horses, timber, and aloes. It is situated in a very central position, and when some newly-projected roads across the mountain chains are opened up, it is probable that a large increase to its exports will take place. A few elephants are still to be found in the forests of the Zitzikamma. Mossel and Plettenberg Bays and the Knysna are the only really available ports on the coast. These divisons contain:

	White.	Coloured.		
George	4,988	5,670	=	10,658
Mossel Bay	2,158	2,118	=	4,276
Knysna	1,479	992	=	2,471

and include an area of about 7,000 square miles.

74. Oudtshoorn *(electoral and fiscal division)* contains a new town of that name, and Dyzellsdorp, both near the Olifant's River. Population, 6,075 white and 5,944 coloured. Total, 12,019.

75. Some very curious natural caves, called the Cango Caverns, well worthy of a visit, are found in this division, a few miles north of the village.

EASTERN DIVISIONS.

76. Uitenhage *(electoral division)*: Uitenhage, Alexandria, and Humansdorp *(fiscal divisions)*.—The division of Uitenhage, formed in 1804, was a very extensive one, and is now subdivided into the divisions of Uitenhage, Alexandria, and Humansdorp, besides the electoral division of Port Elizabeth. Near the coast, this region is traversed by parallel ranges of very high and steep mountains—the Great Winterhoek, Konga, Baviaan's Kloof, and Eland's River mountains; and the Zuurberg mountains separate it from the division of Somerset.

North of these mountains are large dry and barren plains, intersected by belts of hills, called the Little Winterhoek, Zwarteruggens, &c. The Groote or Gamtoos River and its branches—the Baviaan's Kloof, Kouga, and other large periodical streams—drain the greater part of the west of this country; but many other rivers, the Zwartkops, Coega, &c., have short courses from the mountains to the sea. The Sunday's River crosses it from north to south, and separates Alexandria division from that of Uitenhage. The eastern boundary is formed by the Bushman River.

77. The towns and villages are, Uitenhage, on the Zwartkops, a town enjoying a very beautiful and fertile site, about twenty miles from Port Elizabeth; Humansdorp, near St. Frances' Bay; and Alexandria, in Olifant's Hoek, the seats of civil commissioners. Jansenville is in Uitenhage division. Enon and Bethelsdorp, in Uitenhage division, and Hankey, Clarkson, and Kruisfontein, in Humansdorp division, are mission stations,—Enon of the Moravian, and the others of the London Missionary Society.

78. The country east of the Sunday's River, along the Zuurberg, is covered with a dense bush, called the Addo, in which a few elephants and buffaloes are still found. Nearly the whole of the trade of the Eastern Province, the Free State, and Betjouanaland passes through in this direction to Port Elizabeth. The three divisions now under remark have a probable area of 16,000 square miles, and contain:

	White.	Coloured.		
Uitenhage	7,206	10,942	=	18,148
Humansdorp	2,398	5,478	=	7,876
Alexandria	1,931	4,724	=	6,655

Considerabe mineral indications of lead and copper have been found at the Maitland mines, a few miles west of Port Elizabeth, and have been worked, but as yet without any successful results.

79. Port Elizabeth *(electoral and fiscal division)* comprehends a small tract of country formerly included in the Uitenhage division, in the neighbourhood of the town of the same name. The appearance of the surface is rather bare and uninviting, consisting of sterile undulating plains, or sandy downs. There are two villages lately formed in this division, namely, Walmer, about six miles west, and Korsten, about four miles east of Port Elizabeth. The population of this division, including the town of Port Elizabeth, is 7,120 white and 4,513 coloured inhabitants.

80. Albany *(electoral division)*: Albany and Bathurst *(fiscal divisions)*.—The division of Albany, formed and settled by British emigrants in 1820, part of which is now that of Bathurst, includes the country between the Great Fish and Bushman's Rivers, formerly called the Zuurveld, and that lying between the Great Fish and Koonap, as far west as the junction of the latter with the Kaga. It has thus Uitenhage on the west, Bedford and Fort Beaufort on the north, Victoria East on the east, and the ocean to the south-east. It is naturally divided into two parts; the coast region, formerly the Zuurveld, now the division of Bathurst, formerly called Lower Albany, and the Fish River Valley and high lands bounding it, formerly called Upper Albany. The Fish River Valley is generally covered with a dense jungle, and is a very broken country. Along the coast, agricultural pursuits are carried on to a considerable extent.

81. The chief town of Albany and the capital of the Eastern Province is Graham's Town (*vide* Chief Towns). Bathurst, a pleasant village about seven miles from the coast, is the seat of magistracy in the Bathurst division. Salem, Sidbury, and Riebeek are considerable villages in the present division of Albany. The principal rivers are the Great Fish, on the north and east, the Koonap, the Bushman, Kareiga, Kasuga, and Kowie; at the mouth of the latter, considerable harbour improvements are now being carried on.

82. No considerable mountain ranges occur in Albany and Bathurst. The Zuurbergen appear gradually to subside near the mouth of the Great Fish River, the highest points, being the Governor's Kop, about 2,700 feet, and Woest's Hill, near Graham's Town, about 2,200 feet. There are educational mission stations of the Wesleyan community at Salem and Farmerfield, in Albany. The area of Albany and Bathurst together is estimated at 3,000 square miles, and the population, including Graham's Town, is:

	White.	Coloured.		
Albany	8,086	8,178	=	16,264
Bathurst	1,526	3,341	=	4,867

83. Victoria East *(electoral division)*, Victoria East and Peddie *(fiscal divisions)*, comprise the country formerly called the Neutral Territory, lying between the Great Fish River and the Keiskamma and Chumie Rivers. It was formed by Sir H. Smith, in 1848. It may be described as a terrace, flanked on each side with deep kloofs; and comprises the division of Victoria

East on the north, and Peddie on the south of it. The chief towns are Aliee, on the Chumie River, in Vietoria East, about twelve miles east of Fort Beaufort, formerly known by the name of Bloek Drift; Peddie, a military post and village, about twelve miles east of the Great Fish River and twenty miles from the coast; and Wooldridge, a few miles distant from it, near the head of the Beka River, lately founded by the German settlers.

84. The principal rivers in Victoria East and Peddie are the Chumie, Kat, and Keiskamma, the Beka and Chalumna. No mountain ranges of any importance oeeur; the whole region, indeed, is a high terraee, properly a ramifieation or offshoot of the Katberg and Amatola ranges. Many German settlers have lately been loeated in the Peddie division, where there are also large numbers of Fingoes. Between Victoria East and Queen's Town, the eountry near the mountains is very fertile, as is also that near the eoast, but the kloofs on eaeh side of the eentral table-land are steep and bushy. The area of Vietoria East and Peddie is about 1,400 square miles, and it has a population, ineluding the German settlers, of

	White.	Coloured.		
Vietoria East	1,141	7,151	=	8,292
Peddie	996	17,800	=	18,796

The German villages of Hamburgh and Wooldridge, lately formed, are situated in the division of Peddie. The five divisions of Peddie, Victoria East, Albert, Aliwal North, and Queen's Town, oecupy the entire line of the eastern frontier from the Orange River to the sea.

85. Fort Beaufort *(electoral division)*: Fort Beaufort and Stockenstrom *(fiscal divisions)*.—Fort Beaufort, a small but rich division, and Stoekenstrom, or the Kat River Settlement, lie east of Somerset and Bedford, north of Albany, and west of Victoria. This traet of eountry is mountainous, and generally well-wooded, and, in the Kat River espeeially, well-watered and very fertile. The town of Fort Beaufort possesses large military buildings, and is situated on the left bank of the Kat River, whieh is here crossed by a stone bridge. A large industrial mission station, ealled Heald Town, is situated three or four miles east of it. The eountry is well watered by the Koonap and Kat Rivers; and along the foot of the mountains are several valuable sheep farms. The Great Winterberg and Katberg mountains separate Fort Beaufort, on the north, from the division of Queen's Town. The other

remarkable mountains are the Chumie and Kromme ranges. The Stockenstrom division consists of several fertile valleys, lying between offshoots of the Great Winterberg range.

	White.	Coloured.		
Population of Fort Beaufort	2,767	10,574	=	13,341
„ Stockenstrom	1,326	4,321	=	5,647

Area, 1,200 square miles.

86. Somerset *(electoral division)*: Somerset and Bedford *(fiscal divisions)*.—Somerset lies east of Graaff-Reinet, and north of Uitenhage. It is bounded on the north by a lofty chain of mountains, separating it from Cradock, and includes the tract lying between these mountains and the Zuurbergen, which form the boundary of Uitenhage to the south. The Fish River divides this region into two parts; that part east of it being called the division of Bedford. The country is pastoral, chiefly, although in the mountain valleys agriculture is carried on to a considerable extent. The principal rivers are the Great Fish and its branches—the Kaga, Baviaan's, Little Fish, and Koonap. The town of Somerset is situated at the foot of the Boschberg mountains, on the Little Fish River, in a very beautiful country.

87. Bedford is a new village at the foot of the Kagaberg, in one of the finest regions on the eastern frontier. In the Somerset division are the very fertile valleys, called Zwagershock and Agter Bruintjeshoogte; and in the Bedford division are Glenlynden, Glenpringle, and other localities, valleys on the south face of the Great Winterberg range, where the Scotch emigrants, led by the poet Pringle, settled in 1820. The Koonap River separates the division of Bedford from that of Fort Beaufort. The peak, or rather the table-top, of the Great Winterberg, forming the angle beacon between these two divisions, rises to a height of 7,850 feet. Somerset and Bedford have together an area of about 8,000 square miles.

	White.	Coloured.		
Population of Somerset	3,977	6,616	=	10,593
„ Bedford	1,952	6,398	=	8,350
		Total,		18,943

88. Cradock *(electoral and fiscal division)*.—The division of Cradock forms a large elevated basin, surrounded by mountains, in which rise the different periodical streams that form the Great Fish River. The Sneeuwbergen, on the east, divides it from Graaff-

Reinet; the Rhenosterberg, from Middelburg and Colesberg; the Zuurbergen, on the north, from Albert; and the Zwagershoek mountain and Great Winterberg, on the south, from Somerset and Bedford. On the east, the water-shed line dividing the waters of the Great Fish and Kei Rivers separates it from the division of Queen's Town. The physical appearance of Cradock division presents large flats covered with isolated hills; and it is generally a pastoral country. Occasionally, large herds of game—springboks, gnus, &c.—cover these plains. The rivers seldom run, except after heavy rains; and thunderstorms frequent. The only town in the division is Cradock, situated on the left bank of the Great Fish River. Cradock division lies at an elevation of about 3,000 feet above the level of the sea, and is well adapted for sheep-farming. The mountains surrounding it are, in winter, generally covered with snow. The rivers are the Great and Little Brakke, the Vlekte Poort, Tarka, and other streams, which form the heads of the Great Fish River. The Tweetafel and Theebusbergen are remarkable isolated mountains. Several salt-pans are found in this division. Population, 5,924 white, 6,304 coloured = 12,228.

89. Graaff-Reinet *(electoral division)*: Graaff-Reinet and Murraysburg *(fiscal divisions)* lie north of the electoral division of Uitenhage. They include a high mountain region, called the Sneeuwbergen; and the Karroo plains, called Camdebo and Zwarteruggens, at the foot of it; as well as a large tract of highlands north of the mountains, forming the divisions of Richmond (see paragraph 90) and Murraysburg, and the country known by the name of the Midden and Winterveld. The highest mountain in the Colony, the Compassberg, above 9,000 feet in height, is found here. This tract of land is celebrated for the excellency of its sheep-farms, and is chiefly a pastoral region. The town, which, next to Graham's Town, is the largest inland one in the Cape Colony, is situated on the banks of the Sunday's River, and the streets are agreeably planted with orange and other trees. The other villages of importance are Aberdeen, at the foot of the mountains in the Camdebo; and Murraysburg, in the Koudeveld, a high mountain region in the Sneeuwberg. The principal river is the Sunday's, and its branches. Wool is the chief article of export, and the farms are considered the most valuable in the Colony. The winters in the Sneeuwberg are very severe, and thunderstorms are frequent in summer. Graaff-Reinet, together with Murraysburg (and Richmond, now electorally separate) has an area of about 18,000 square miles,

and contains, with Murraysburg, 7,000 white and 10,635 coloured inhabitants, consisting of:

	White.	Coloured.		
Graaff-Reinet	6,013	8,682	=	14,695
Murraysburg	987	1,953	=	2,940

90. Richmond *(electoral division)*: Richmond and Hope Town *(fiscal divisions)*.—The fiscal division of Richmond was, until the promulgation of Act No. 3 of 1865, a portion of the electoral division of Graaff-Reinet, which (see paragraph 89) it resembles in climate and productions. It includes great part of the region known as Winterveld, around the Brakke River. The divisional town, of the same name is situated near the source of that affluent of the Orange River. The fiscal division of Hope Town formerly constituted the northern part of Colesberg, in the description of which (see paragraph 91) it may be taken as included. Its chief town, Hope Town, is about 120 miles north-west of Colesberg, and near the Orange River. Population:

	White.	Coloured.		
Richmond	2,685	3,405	=	6,090
Hope Town	2,223	2,126	=	4,349
		Total		10,439

91. Colesberg *(electoral division)*: Colesberg and Middelburg *(fiscal divisions)*.—This division, founded in 1825, now includes the divisions of Colesberg and Middelburg. It is bounded on the north by the Orange River, through its whole extent; on the west, by the Orange River and divisions of Hope Town and Beaufort; on the south by Richmond and Graaff-Reinet; on the east, by Cradock and Albert. It comprehends a vast extent of dry, barren, and apparently sterile plains, sloping down towards the Orange River, and dotted over with isolated hills. Since the formation of dams, the growth of wool has much increased, and farms have become very valuable. The rivers all run into the Orange, and comprehend the Zeekoe, Ongars, Brakke, and Oorlog's Poort, besides other minor water-courses. The towns are Colesberg, about 12 miles south of the Orange River, on the main road from Cape Town to the Free State; Hanover, a new village, between Richmond and Colesberg; and Middelburg, a flourishing town, nearly midway between Graaff-Reinet, Colesberg, and Cradock, is the centre of a rather fertile and well-watered district. Wool is the principal product of Colesberg, which generally resembles the divisions

of Richmond and Cradock. That rare antelope, the gemsbok, is still found in parts of Colesberg. The area of these divisions (together with Hope Town, now electorally separate) is together about 20,000 square miles, with a population of 5,461 white and 7,299 coloured people, consisting of:

	White.	Coloured.		
Middelburg	1,976	2,669	=	4,645
Colesberg	3,485	4,630	=	8,115

92. Albert and Aliwal North *(electoral and fiscal divisions)* form the northern slope of the Stormberg mountains, and are bounded on the east by the colonial boundary, the Tees River, an inconsiderable stream, to its sources in the Quathlamba mountains; on the west, by the Oorlog's Poort River; on the north, by the Orange River; and on the south, by the range of the Zuurberg, Bamboes, and Stormbergen. The country is drained by many rivers of short and rapid course, locally called spruits, which rise in the mountains and fall into the Orange River. The Kraai River and Stormberg Spruit are the principal of these. The country lies high, has a cold climate in winter, and is subject to violent thunderstorms. It is eligible for breeding sheep, cattle, and horses. On the east is a high range of mountains, called the Wittebergen, which runs nearly at right angles to the Stormbergen, down to the Orange River. The principal towns are Burghersdorp, on the Stormberg Spruit, the chief town of Albert; Aliwal North, on the Orange River, the principal place in the Aliwal North, division; and Dordrecht, more recently founded near the Stormbergen, also in Aliwal North. The high road from East London to the Free State crosses Albert from south to north. There is a large native settlement and mission station at the Wittebergen, in Aliwal North. Albert and Aliwal North together have an area of about 8,000 square miles, and a population of 4,911 white and 4,891 coloured for Albert, and 3,953 white and 18,247 coloured for Aliwal North.

93. Queen's Town *(electoral and fiscal division)* is totally separated by a chain of high mountains—the Katberg, Gaikaskop, and Amatola ranges,—from Victoria East and Peddie, with which it was, under the name of Victoria North, electorally associated, until the Act No. 3 of 1865 erected it into a distinct constituency. It includes the basin of the Great Kei River, between the Stormbergen on the north, and the Kat and Amatola mountains on the south. Its eastern boundary, also that of the Colony, until the present year, which has witnessed the

annexation of British Kaffraria, is the Indwe River, to its junction with the Great Kei, and thence to the eastern part of the Amatola mountains, which separate it, on the south, from British Kaffraria. Its western boundary is the division of Cradock. It was founded in 1853 by Sir G. Cathcart, out of part of Kafirland Proper, and is a highly fertile and well-watered region. The rivers are all tributaries of the Great Kei, and include the White Kei, Black Kei, Indwe, Cacadu, Klaas Smit's, Thomas, and Klip Plaats Rivers. Great facilities for irrigation exist, and the country, being thickly settled, is generally very prosperous. Many mountain ranges, offshoots of the Stormbergen, intersect it. The highest peak is Hangklip (6,800 feet). The principal town is Queen's Town, on the Indwe River. Whittlesea, a small village on the Oxkraal River, Lesseyton, Shiloh, and Kamastone are considerable mission stations. Queen's Town has an area of about 6,500 square miles, and a population of 3,650 white, 1,092 Hottentot, 31,875 Kafir (principally in the Tambookie Location: census of March 1865), and 7,938 other coloured.

94. King William's Town and East London *(electoral and fiscal divisions)* are the two divisions of the territory annexed by Act No. 3 of 1865, previously known as British Kaffraria, and more fully described in Chapter VII.

CHAPTER III.—CHIEF CITIES AND TOWNS.

95. The chief cities and towns in the Cape Colony, worthy of a particular description are *Cape Town*, the capital, founded in 1652, and now containing 28,457 inhabitants. It is the seat of government and of bishops of the English and the Romish Churches. It possesses a college, an excellent library, a large hospital, seven banks, several other public companies, a botanic garden, a citadel and large military buildings, many flour mills, and saw mills; gas works; and a handsome structure, containing a new museum and library, has within the last few years been erected in the Government Gardens. It is a port of considerable importance; and no less than 989 vessels entered its port in the year ending 31st December 1864, and the customs duties received during the same period amounted to £116,677.

96. Cape Town lies on the shores of Table Bay, at the foot of Table Mountain, and is composed of streets generally arranged at right angles to each other. It is well supplied with water; but, with many natural advantages, the artificial

drainage is generally very defective. Four wooden jetties afford accommodation for the trade of the city. Extensive harbour-works in Table Bay were commenced in 1860, consisting of an inner and an outer basin, having a total area of nearly 14 acres, and protected by a breakwater which has already been carried out 1,500 feet. The docks and 1,800 feet of breakwater will, it is expected, be complete during 1867; but the eventual length of the latter is intended to be 3,000 feet. The first truck of stones for this undertaking was "tipped" by H.R.H. Prince Alfred on 17th September 1860. A patent slip, the property of a private company, was a few years ago laid down near the harbour works; and has been a great advantage to the port, being available for vessels of 1,500 tons.* The principal public buildings are the St. George's Cathedral, the Dutch Reformed Church, Public Library, Commercial Exchange, Town-hall, Somerset Hospital, Castle and Military Barracks. The town is lighted with gas, and the streets paved, but foot-paths are generally wanting. The markets are well supplied with meat, fruit, and vegetables. Large works connected with a harbour of refuge in Table Bay are now in progress, and several handsome stores and offices for public companies have been recently erected.

97. *Graham's Town*, the chief town and capital of the eastern province, was founded in 1812, and is situated in the division of Albany, about 600 miles east of Cape Town, near the sources of the Kowie River, 1,728 feet above the level of the sea, about twenty-five miles distant from the coast, and ninety from Port Elizabeth, contains 926 houses and 5,949 inhabitants, and is the seat of a large military establishment. It is an episcopal city, and has a cathedral (a very plain building), large barracks, four banks, three insurance companies, several churches, and other public institutions. It is the centre of a considerable trade with the interior, and a line of railway is projected to connect it with Port Elizabeth.

98. *Port Elizabeth*, the port of the eastern districts, in Algoa Bay, was founded in 1826, and now contains 8,700 inhabitants. The customs dues, received in the year ending 31st December 1864, amounted to not less than £176,649. It is a very thriving and active, bustling town, although in no way distinguished for the beauty of its buildings. It contains a fort, two banks, two insurance companies, a hospital, several churches, and other

* A similar and equally successful work, belonging to another company, was previously in use at Simon's Town.

public institutions. Nearly all the trade of the eastern districts Free State, and Betjouanaland passes through Port Elizabeth. A light-house is situated on Cape Recif, about eight miles south of the town. Gas and water works are in course of construction.

99. *Graaff-Reinet* may be styled the capital of the midland districts. It is a flourishing inland town, about 160 miles north of Port Elizabeth, founded in 1784. It contains 3,717 inhabitants, two banks, several churches, &c. The streets are laid out at right angles, planted with trees, and watered by streams led out from the Sunday's River. The high range of the Sneeuwbergen surrounds the basin in which this town is situated.

100. The other principal towns have been noticed in our description of the different divisions, and offer nothing remarkable. The order of population is as follows:

Paarl	5,929
Uitenhage	3,342
Worcester	3,266
Stellenbosch	2,975
Wellington	2,441
Swellendam	2,016
George	1,981
Cradock	1,845
Somerset	1,822
Montagu	1,460
Colesberg	1,395

CHAPTER IV.—HISTORY OF THE CAPE COLONY.

101. The Cape Colony was founded by the Dutch Government in 1652, was conquered by the English in 1795, given up by them in 1803, and again recaptured in 1806; since which time it has prospered exceedingly. When the Cape became a British colony, in 1806, the boundaries were the Great Fish River, on the east; and on the north, an imaginary line from the Buffel's River, on the Atlantic, to Plettenberg's Baken, on the Zeekoe River, in the Colesberg district, and from thence to the Stormberg Spruit. The boundaries have been since gradually enlarged, so as to include all the country south of the Orange River and west of the Wittebergen, the Indwe, and the Great Kei. The principal historical events, since 1806, are the Kafir wars of 1812, 1819, 1828, 1835-6, 1846-7, and 1851-2; the introduction of British settlers in 1820; the emigration of

the Dutch boers, 1837–8–9; the settlement of Natal Colony in 1843–4; the extension of the boundary to the Orange River and Kieskamma in 1848–9; the annexation of British Kaffraria in 1848; the granting of a constitution and the present system of government in 1853; the Kafir famine and dispersion of their race in 1856–7; the introduction of railways, and improvements to the harbour of Table Bay, in 1857; the introduction of European emigrants in 1858; the formation of British Kaffraria into a separate colony in 1855; the introduction of telegraphic communication in 1860; the census in March 1865; and the incorporation of British Kaffraria with the Cape Colony in 1866. (For other remarkable events, *vide* Table of Chronology —Appendix III.)

CHAPTER V.—JUDICIAL, FISCAL, MILITARY, MUNICIPAL, ECCLESIASTICAL, AND OTHER INSTITUTIONS.

102. The judicial establishment of the Cape Colony consists of a supreme court, presided over by a chief justice and four puisne judges. Circuit courts, for both civil and criminal cases, are held twice a year in twenty-nine of the chief towns and villages of the Colony, and appeals can be made from the circuit court decision to the supreme court, in Cape Town, and thence to the Privy Council, in England. The foundation of the laws of the Cape Colony is the old Roman-Dutch, modified, however, in a certain degree. The resident magistrates have all a limited local jurisdiction.

103. The revenue of the Cape Colony is derived from an *ad valorem* duty on all goods imported (with some few exceptions), quitrents, stamp duties, and duties on the transfer of landed property, and several other minor sources. It amounted, in the year 1864, to £525,672, and the expenditure to £530,945. The public debt of the Colony amounts to £851,650, and has been principally incurred for immigration, gaols, and harbour improvements. It bears interest at 6 per cent. (For tables showing amount of imports, exports, &c., *vide* Appendix I.)

104. The military defences of the Cape Colony consist of the old Dutch works to guard the approaches to Table and Simon's Bays, and the numerous forts and other strong places, constructed by the British Government, to repel the incursions of the Kafir tribes, at different periods, on the eastern frontier and in British Kaffraria. An average force of five or six thousand regular troops has been, for some years back, maintained on

our eastern frontier and in British Kaffraria, and numerous local corps of volunteers—infantry, cavalry, and artillery—have been lately raised, both in the Western and Eastern divisions.

105. The Cape Colony enjoys, to a great extent, the privilege of municipal institutions. Cape Town and all the principal towns of the Colony are now self-governing in many local respects. In Cape Town, the police force is established on the London principle, and the city also enjoys the luxury of gas-light. Graham's Town shares with it the advantages of water-pipes, which will, no doubt, be used in several other localities before many years have expired.

106. Of the ecclesiastical establishments, the clergy of the Dutch Reformed Church constitute the most numerous body, and the salaries of many of them are paid by Government. The constitution of the church is Presbyterian, and the doctrines are those contained in the Confession of the Synod of Dort and the Heidelberg Catechism, and similar to those adopted by the Church of Scotland. Allowances are also granted to the Episcopal clergy and other denominations, in a more or less modified degree; but, theoretically, perfect religious freedom exists; and the law recognizes no denominational distinction of churches or sects. Missionaries from nearly every institution in Europe and America are found throughout South Africa, from Cape Town to the Zambezi.

107. The educational system of the Cape Colony is under the charge of a superintendent-general, and is now based on a system of grants in aid of local arrangements. Schoolmasters, receiving a certain stipend from the Government, are, however, still established in a few towns and villages in the Cape Colony. The various junior members of the public service have been, for some years back, mostly selected from candidates who have passed a public examination.

108. A public board of examiners was created in 1858, who are authorized to grant certificates of degrees of proficiency in the different branches of science and art.

109. The South African College was founded in 1829, is well attended, and has professors of mathematics, classics, physical science, law, &c.

CHAPTER VI.—PUBLIC WORKS—ROADS AND MOUNTAIN PASSES.

110. During the last twenty years, large sums of money have been expended in opening up and improving the different passes on the main lines of roads of the Cape Colony. Among them

we may mention the hard road over the Cape Flats, made in 1843-4-5; the road over the Hottentots' Holland mountains, called Sir Lowry's Pass, made in 1829-30; the Fransche Hoek road, 1832-3; Montagu Pass, 1845-9 (formerly Cradock's Pass), over the Onteniqua mountains, near the town of George; Mostert's Hoek, now Mitchell's Pass (opening the Warm and Cold Bokkeveld), 1849-50-51; Bain's Kloof, in connection with the former, across the Drakenstein mountains, completed in 1853-4. In the year 1859, considerable works were also undertaken in the Pikenier's Kloof, improving the communication of Cape Town with Clanwilliam; and at Meiring's Poort, opening a road through the Zwarteberg, between the Beaufort district and the port of Aliwal (South) or Mossel Bay. Large improvements have also been commenced on the road between Port Elizabeth and Graaff-Reinet, and between Middelburg and the latter town. It is also proposed to throw bridges over the Great Fish, Zwartkop's, Koonap, and Orange Rivers. Between Graham's Town and Cradock, improvements have likewise been commenced, and the Great Zuurberg Pass, between Port Elizabeth and Somerset, which has been for many years in hand, is now on the point of completion. Works at the Katberg, now nearly complete, have been vigorously carried on for some years; and, when permanently opened (which they are expected to be this year), will greatly facilitate the communication between Queen's Town and the coast divisions. A railway connects Cape Town with Wellington, and another with Wynberg; and a system of electric telegraph is now extending itself through the Colony.

CHAPTER VII.—BRITISH KAFFRARIA.

111. British Kaffraria, within its present limits, comprehends the country between the Keiskamma and Great Kei Rivers; bounded on the north by the Amatola mountains, and from their eastern extremity by the high road from King William's Town to Queen's Town, as far as the Great Kei River, an area of about 4,000 square miles. It is the region from whence issued, until finally subjected to British rule, those hordes of Kafir marauders who devastated our frontier in the various wars from 1806 till 1853, actuated by love of plunder, or excited to fanaticism by false prophets, often the tools of the ambition of the chiefs.

112. British Kaffraria was first declared a British province by Sir Benjamin D'Urban, after the war of 1835–6, under the

name of the province of Queen Adelaide; but the measure being disapproved of by the Home Government, it was, with few restrictions, given back to the Kafir chiefs, together with the country between the Great Fish and Keiskamma Rivers, then called the neutral territory, now forming the division of South Victoria. After the Kafir war of 1846–7, Sir Harry Smith, then Governor, again formed it into a British province, re-establishing King William's Town, on the Buffalo River, as its principal town and seat of military head-quarters. Since that time the elements of order and civilization have been gradually extending, and King William's Town is now a flourishing town, with numerous public buildings and establishments. Many military posts are established in the most important positions. See paragraph 101.

113. The port of British Kaffraria is at the mouth of the Buffalo River, where considerable harbour improvements have been effected, and is called East London.

114. British Kaffraria is bounded on the north by lofty, well-wooded, and romantic chains of mountains, a continuation of the Great Winterberg, called the Amatolas, which separates it from the Queen's Town division. It is well watered by the Keiskamma—the late boundary between it and the Cape Colony—and its tributary, the Chumie, the Buffalo, Gonubi, Chalumna, and other torrents, generally running a short and tortuous course in deep beds, and the Great Kei, a considerable stream which forms its eastern boundary and separates it from Kafirland Proper. Its physical aspect is similar to that of Lower Albany, namely, a coast region, intersected by deep wooded river-valleys, and bounded, at a distance of about forty miles from the coast, by a lofty mountain range. It is generally a pastoral country, but in many places well adapted for agricultural pursuits, and presenting much attractive scenery and well-wooded ranges of hills.

115. *Population.*—The bulk of the inhabitants are of the Kafir race, living under the rule of their chiefs and under the general superintendence of the High Commissioner, who is also Governor of the Cape Colony; but in the towns are found many English and German settlers. A famine in 1857, consequent on the superstitious belief in the prophecies of the false prophet, Umhlakasa, contributed, however, to break up and disperse the greater part of the followers of the Kafir chiefs, many of whom were in confinement in the Colony for various offences against law and order, and their hereditary rule was consequently much broken up. Many German settlers, portions of the

British-German Legion, who served during the late Russian war, were, on the termination of the Crimean war, located along the line of the Buffalo River, extending from the port of East London to the eastern point of the Amatola mountains; and several little military villages and settlements have been founded.

116. The Kafirs living in British Kaffraria are generally called Amakosa Kafirs, and include the Gaika tribes, under the chiefs Sandilli, the Tslambi, under Umhala, and the Amagonubie, formerly under Pato, besides some minor tribes. Owing to the famine and consequent dispersion of these tribes, their numbers have been lately reduced to an extent almost unprecedented in the history of mankind (see par 125).

117. *Towns.*—King William's Town was originally founded by Sir B. D'Urban, in 1836, but was for many years abandoned. It was refounded by Sir H. Smith, in 1848. It now contains several large military buildings, excellent houses and stores, three churches, &c. It is situated on the left bank of the Buffalo River, about eighty miles east of Graham's Town, and thirty-six from the port of East London. Its population, exclusive of military, is about 1,200 souls.

118. East London, at the mouth of the Buffalo, is the port of British Kaffraria, and large works are at present being carried on for its improvement. At present, the anchorage is rather exposed. A military post, called Fort Glamorgan, defends the port.

119. Forts Hare, Cox, Glamorgan, Pato, Grey, Keiskamma Hoek, Murray, and Izeli, points which will eventually form the nuclei of important villages, are all military posts, more or less considerable.

120. Along the left bank of the Buffalo are a chain of military villages, lately formed by the German Legion, extending from East London to the east point of the Amatola mountains. The chief is Stutterheim, near the old Dohne missionary station, close to the eastern termination of the Amatola mountains. Of the others, we may name Panmure, Berlin, Jackson, &c.

121. Some years ago the then High Commissioner Sir George Grey granted to such settlers as could fulfil certain conditions, farms on both sides of the principal lines of road leading from the Colony to King William's Town, with a view of turning the agricultural and other capabilities of the country to the best advantage, and introducing a labouring rural population.

122. *Mission Stations and Churches.*—There are many mission stations of the Church of England, Independent, and Wesleyan churches, in British Kaffraria. The chief are St. John's, Sandilli's Kraal, Keiskamma Hoek, and Umhala's

Kraal (Church of England); Peelton, Knapp's Hope, and Lovedale (Independent); and Mount Coke (Wesleyan). British Kaffraria is an archdeaconry of the diocese of Graham's Town. Besides these stations, there are churches in King William's Town and East London.

123. *Roads and Communications.*—By the exertion of military working parties and Kafir labourers, the communications have been much improved, and the works now in progress at the mouth of the Buffalo, to improve the port of East London, have been already noticed.

124. *Animals.*—In British Kaffraria there are few of the larger antelopes, and no lions, elephants, &c., found. Generally speaking, on the coast region of Kafirland, all the game of any size has been for many years destroyed.

125. The following abstract of the population returns of British Kaffraria on the 1st of June 1858, compiled by the Government of British Kaffraria, will show the immense decrease of the population consequent on the destruction of food, caused by the false prophecies of the impostor, Umhlakasa:

		No. of Kraals or Villages.	Adults.	Children.	Total.
Kafir population.	1st June, 1857	3,942	50,045	54,676	104,721
	1st June, 1858	1,291	27,320	24,866	52,186
Decrease in one year		2,651	22,725	29,810	52,535

And the decrease is even more, as in the census for 1858 are included many natives in King William's Town and Crown reserves, not in the census of 1st June, 1857. By the same return, the European population of British Kaffraria, on the 1st of June 1858, consisted of—German military settlers 2,119; other Europeans, 1,792; total European population, 3,911; of which the proportion of women was about one to four.—(For the present population, see paragraph 37.)

CHAPTER VIII.—NATAL.

126. *History.*—The region now forming the Colony of Natal derives its name from being discovered by the Portuguese on Christmas-day, 1497. It was visited, about 1822, by several

white traders, who found the country in possession of the Zulu tyrant, Chaka, who ruled in the most sanguinary manner over all the tribes from the Umzimculu to the Umfolozi or St. Lucia River. He was killed and succeeded by his brother, Dingaan, in 1838; but the latter having treacherously massacred a large party of the emigrant Dutch farmers who had made their way to his kraal, by invitation to sell land, over the mountains from the Cape Colony, he was attacked, and finally destroyed by the Dutch boers, who made his brother Panda, paramount chief, and settled themselves as lords and masters in his country. In 1842, after severe resistance on the part of the boers, that part of it now forming the Colony of Natal was taken possession of by the British Government, and proclaimed a British Colony on the 12th May 1843; since which time, although labouring under many severe disadvantages, from want of capital and labour, it has progressed very satisfactorily, and bids fair to become a valuable dependency of the British Crown.

127. *Boundaries.*—The Colony of Natal is bounded on the west by the Umzimculu River, which separates it from Kafirland Proper; a range of high and almost impassable mountains, called the Quathlamba or Drakensberg, a continuation of the Sneeuwbergen and Stormbergen, in the Cape Colony, divides it from Basutoland and the Free State; on the east, the Utugela and Umsungati or Buffel's Rivers divide it from the Zulu country and a small strip of territory claimed by the Transvaal boers; on the south-east is the Indian Ocean. It has an area of about 25,000 square miles; but this does not include No Man's Land, lately incorporated, and lying to the west of Natal.

128. *Surface—Rivers, Mountains, &c.*—The proximity of the high mountain ranges above mentioned, and their various ramifications, gives a general character of irregularity and roughness to the surface; indeed, the whole of the mountains may be considered spurs or offshoots of the Quathlamba. The great basin of the Utugela River includes, perhaps, one half the area of the whole Colony, and forms an elevated plateau, considerably higher than the coast region. The principal tributaries of the Tugela are the Mooi, Klip, Great and Little Bushman, and Buffel's Rivers. The Umzimculu and Umcomansi, near the boundary, run through a very difficult and broken country, intersected by spurs of the Quathlamba. The Umgani and Umvoti are likewise important streams. None of these rivers, however, are navigable. Some considerable falls occur on many of the rivers; one on the Umgani, near Pietermaritzburg, is 280 feet, and another, near the source of the Tugela, still higher.

129. *Counties.*—Natal is divided into the following counties:—D'Urban and Victoria, coast region; Pietermaritzburg, Umcomansi, and Umvoti, central; Klip River and Weenen, foot of mountains.

130. *Towns and Villages.*—The principal towns and villages are Pietermaritzburg, the capital, with nearly 3,600 white inhabitants, situated on a branch of the Umgani River, about fifty miles inland, and about 1,800 feet above the level of the sea (possessing three banks, several military establishments, churches, &c.); D'Urban or Port Natal, with 3,023 inhabitants; Ladismith on Klip River, near the foot of the Drakensberg mountains; Weenen, Verulam, Richmond, and Albert. On the east of the Umsungati or Buffel's River, the boers have built a small village, called Utrecht, belonging to the Transvaal Republic, on a piece of territory claimed by them.

131. *Population, Revenue, &c.*—The population of Natal consists of Dutch farmers, English immigrants, and a large amount of the Kafir races, the remains of tribes who have from time to time taken refuge within our boundary from the tyranny of the Zulu chiefs living east of the Utugela. By the Natal Colonial Blue Book for 1864, the sum total of the population is stated at 16,369 white and 175,220 coloured. Of the white, the British were, to those of Dutch descent, in the ratio of 6 : 5, when the first edition of this work appeared: no means exist for correcting this calculation for the present date.

132. *Religion, Education.*—Natal forms a diocese of a colonial bishop of the Church of England; and places of worship for many denominations of Christians exist. Many mission stations of the American, Norwegian, German, and other societies have been founded. Education is receiving increased attention, and schools are multiplying.

133. *Productions.*—Natal produces sugar, coffee, cotton, indigo, arrowroot, pine apples, and many other tropical productions; and several sugar-mills, &c., have lately been erected in the region near the coast, and are now being worked with considerable success. Near the mountains, the different European cereals are grown to a great extent; and sheep-farming in the higher plateaux is annually increasing.

134. *Climate.*—The climate of Natal, as may be seen from its productions, is almost tropical; yet it is considered extremely healthy. Fevers and other epidemics are almost unknown, except in a few marshy spots near the coast. Thunderstorms are frequent in summer, and often extremely violent, causing at

times loss of life. In winter, the peaks of the Quathlamba mountains, which rise to a height of about 8,000 feet, and 4,000 feet above the high plains at their base, are generally, for three or four months, covered with snow. In the upper basin of the Tugela River, which lies higher than the coast region, the climate is much cooler, and resembles that of the Free State. The general range of the thermometer, near the coast, is from 53° to 90°. The summer is the rainy season. In 1858, the rain-fall at Pietermaritzburg was 25·14 inches, while at D'Urban, on the coast, it was 54·12 inches.

135. *Animals.*—Natal formerly abounded in the usual larger African animals, and a considerable quantity of ivory was exported. Of late years, however, the elephant and rhinoceros have retired before the footsteps of man, although the former is still found in densely wooded localities along the coast. The alligator is found in some of the rivers. The smaller antelopes are numerous. A large species of boa is likewise found; and serpent life appears to increase in size as the traveller advances to the north-east.

136. *Minerals*—Report speaks favourably of the mineral wealth of Natal, but no mines of any metal have been as yet worked. Coal of excellent quality is found in two or three localities. The geological features of the Quathlamba, as far as known, resemble those of the Sneeuwberg and Stormberg ranges of the Cape Colony.

137. *Government.*—Natal is governed by a Lieut.-Governor. The legislature consists of one House—the Legislative Council—of 18 members, including four officers of Government, who are members *ex officio*. Municipal institutions have been granted to the principal towns.

138. *Roads, Communications, and Harbours.*—There is no practicable road across the mountain range, except the De Beer and Bezuidenhout Passes, which lead by a very circuitous route through the Free State to the Cape Colony. Owing to the number of rivers running in deep beds from the mountains, travelling here is difficult, and when the rivers are flooded, considerable delays are experienced. The only port is the nearly land-locked basin of Port Natal, the entrance of which, however, is impeded by a bar of shifting sand, on which the depth of water varies from 9 to 15 feet. A railway has been constructed from the port to D'Urban, and another is projected thence to Pietermaritzburg. Important improvements to the harbour are in progress.

CHAPTER IX.—ORANGE FREE STATE.

139. The Orange Free State forms a sort of connecting link between the Cape Colony, the Transvaal Republic, and Natal. It consists chiefly of vast undulating plains, which slope down from the Maluti mountains to the Vaal River, dotted over, however, in many places, with rocky hills, here locally called kopjies; although, in the northern part, hundreds of square miles are found with hardly a break on the horizon.

140. The boundaries of the Free State are, on the west and north, the Vaal River, to its source in the Likwa Spruit, in the Drakensberg mountains, which divides it from Betjouanaland and the Transvaal boer republic; the Drakensberg mountains, on the north-east, separate it from Natal; the Wittebergen, an offshoot of the former, a line dividing the waters of the Caledon River from those of the Vaal, and thence to a point on the Orange River, a few miles north of the Kraai River, divide it from Basutoland, or Moshesh's country;* the Orange River, as far as its junction with the Caledon, separates it from the Cape Colony; and from thence to the Vaal it is bounded by the independent territory of the Griquas, a narrow strip of country which interposes between it and the colonial divisions of Colesberg and Albert. It contains an area of about 50,000 square miles.

141. This large surface consists generally of vast plains, with little wood, except along the water-courses which traverse it. All its rivers—among which may be named the Modder, Riet, Valsche, Little and Great Vet, Wilge, Leibenberg's Vlei—fall into the Vaal River, except the Caledon, which is itself a considerable stream, and, like the latter, is one of the chief affluents of the Orange River.

142. The Caledon, Vaal, Orange, Umzimvobo, and Tugela Rivers, draining, respectively, the Cape Colony, Free State, Kaffraria, and Natal, running to all four points of the compass, rise in or near the Mont aux Sources, in the north-western angle of Natal Colony, and the highest point in the great mountain

* This part of the boundary has been a fertile source of dispute between the Basutos and the Free State; and a war arising out of this dispute, which has now been carried on (February 1866) for about 12 months, is still undecided.

range, a continuation of that of the Cape Colony, which divides the Free State and Basutoland from Natal and Kafirland—(for a description of which, see Basutoland). The country formerly supported vast herds of large game—which are still found, though in diminished numbers,—and lying very high, is admirably adapted for the growth of wool.

143. *Divisions.*—The Free State is divided into the following

Districts.	*Chief Towns and Villages.*
Bloemfontein	Bloemfontein. Boshof.
Winburg	Winburg. Cronstadt.
Smithfield	Smithfield.
Harrismith	Harrismith.
Fauresmith	Fauresmith.

144. *Towns.*—The chief town and seat of government is Bloemfontein, about 150 miles north-west of Colesberg, on a tributary of the Modder River, in latitude 29° 8′ south. It contains about 150 houses, a Dutch, Episcopal, and Roman Catholic church. In 1857, not less than 2,200 bales of wool were sold in this town, and the quantity has since been largely increased. A small fort, mounting some cannon, and erected by the British Government during its occupation of the country, is situated in a commanding position near the town. Smithfield, about thirty-five miles north of Aliwal North, near the Caledon River; Fauresmith, on the Griqua boundary; and Winburg and Harrismith, on the high road from Natal to the Cape Colony, which passes through the Free State, are all flourishing villages. The two latter, however, are but inconsiderable. Cronstadt and Boshof are lately-formed villages, as yet in embryo. These villages are generally the seat of a Dutch Reformed Church, and in many of them branches of Cape banks have been established.

145. By the latest returns, the population of the Free State was 12,859 white and about 5,000 coloured inhabitants, exclusive of wild Bushmen and migratory Betjouanas and Korannas; but it now probably exceeds 15,000 white and 10,000 coloured. The revenue for 1857 amounted to about £17,500.

146. The country now forming the Free State was a few years ago, as Captain Harris describes it, a "howling wilderness," inhabited by wandering hordes of Bushmen and broken

tribes of Betjouana and Kafir refugees from the armies of the great Zulu tyrants,—Chaka, Dingaan, and Moselekatse. After the Kafir war of 1835-6, a spirit of dissatisfaction arose in the minds of many of the frontier Dutch farmers, and an extensive emigration took place from the Colony, which extended as far north and east as the Vaal River, and over the mountains to Natal; and gradually the farmers settled down along the water-courses of these vast plains, then tenanted by immense herds of the larger game. By degrees, the attitude of these farmers, in proclaiming their independence of the British Crown, attracted the notice of Government; and in 1848, after some opposition and one or two conflicts with our troops, the country was annexed by Sir H. Smith to the British Empire, and continued so until 1854, when Her Majesty's Commissioner, Sir G. Clerk, formally gave it up, and allowed the inhabitants to form a Government according to their own wishes. The government is now in the hands of a President, freely elected by the land-drost and heemraden in the several districts, while the Volks-raad exercise legislative functions.

147. *Animals.*—Nearly all the larger antelopes are found on the plains of the Free State, and lions are also still numerous; but the giraffe, rhinoceros, and elephant are not now to be found south of the Vaal River; except the latter, as before-mentioned, in some of the dense forests near the coast in the Cape Colony and Natal.

148. The principal productions of the Free State are wool, cattle, corn, hides, and antelope skins. It contains upwards of a million of woolled sheep. No minerals of any kind are found in sufficient quantity to pay for working. Timber, for building purposes, is scarce; for fuel, willows and acacia are found along the water-courses. Stone is procured in abundance. Lime is scarce.

149. The country lying high (about 5,000 feet above the level of the sea), is cold in winter, and in summer experiences violent thunder-storms. It is very healthy and favourable to European constitutions. Long droughts often prevail.

150. *Roads.*—The country is level, and the roads, generally, are very good. The great main road from Cape Town to Port Natal passes in a circuitous manner through it, for the immense mountain ranges of the Maluti are quite impassable, except through one or two passes north of the Witte-bergen. None of the rivers can be made available for internal communication, owing to the frequent occurrence of shallows, rapids, &c.

CHAPTER X.—THE TRANSVAAL REPUBLIC.

151. *Description.*—The Transvaal Republic includes all the country north of the Vaal River, and on both slopes of the Magaliesberg or Cashan mountains, which form the watershed line between the Orange River and the Limpopo River systems; into which the emigrant farmers retired after the annexation of the Sovereignty or Free State, in 1848, to the British Crown. Its limits lie between latitude 22° to 27° south and longitude 27° to 31° east.

152. *Boundaries.*—The northern boundary of the republic, although not very clearly defined, may be described as formed by the Ouri or Limpopo River, here running nearly from west to east; its eastern boundary, by the continuation of the Drakensberg mountains, separate it from Natal and the sea-coast region, inhabited by Zulu Kafirs; on the south, it has the Vaal River, to its source, dividing it from the Free State republic; and, on the west, an undefined line separates it from the Betjouana tribes, still independent, and the desert region of the Kalihari. Thus an area of probably not less than 70,000 square miles is more or less under the control of the emigrant boers of the Free State.

153. *Surface of Country.*—On the east, a well-defined mountain range forms, as it were, the buttress of a lofty plateau, in which the country drained by the Limpopo is situated, and places it quite in a different zone of climate from the coast region. Nearly at right angles to the range, another belt of very high land, called the Magaliesberg range, runs east and west, forming a watershed line between the river system of the Vaal and Orange and Ouri or Limpopo. The southern face of this range presents lofty undulating plains, generally well watered and abounding with game. To the north, descending into the basin of the Limpopo, many high parallel chains of hills are met with, through narrow poorts or openings in which flow the many streams which form, farther to the north-west, the Ouri or Limpopo. These rivers are generally available for irrigation; and extensive forests cover a great portion of the country.

154. *Rivers.*—Among the rivers running south, and tributary to the Vaal, are the Klakua or Mooi River, Schoon Spruit, and Likwa. On the northern slope are the Pienaar's, Olifant's or Lepalule (a considerable stream), Aaps, Eland's or Keitling, Marikwa, Moguaree, 'Ngotuane, and many others, which eventually form the Limpopo, a river whose emboncliure on the coast is, as yet, not clearly ascertained.

155. *Mountains.*—Beside the principal range of the Drakensberg and Magaliesberg, are the subsidiary ranges of the Chuanyane, Waterberg, Grensberg, Zoutpansberg, generally running from south-west to north-east, and many of them of considerable height. The highest point, perhaps, is Mureke or Hangklip, probably 8,000 feet above the sea; but the general level of the country is about 4,000 feet. The range in which this peak is forms the Mural mountains of Harris; and the Magaliesbergen are the same traveller's Cashan mountains.

156. *Towns and Villages.*—The principal towns and villages are Mooiriversdorp or Potchefstroom, on the Klakua or Mooi River, the seat of the local government, about twenty miles north of the Vaal River; Rustenberg, a few miles north of the Magaliesberg; Zoutpansberg, the most remote European village in South Africa, about 60 miles south of the Limpopo, and 1,260 miles north-east of Cape Town; Leydenberg and Origstadt, places of small importance, about 80 miles south of Zoutpansberg; and other small villages. Pretorius, a few miles north-east of Rustenberg, has lately been founded.

157. *Population.*—The population of the Transvaal State consists principally of emigrant farmers, and a mixture of deserters and foreign refugees from the Cape Colony and Natal. Their numbers can hardly be ascertained, but are supposed to amount to at least 18,000 souls. Scattered through the country are numerous kraals of native Betjouanas, who live in a kind of servitude, if not actual slavery, amongst their masters, to whom they have to supply labour whenever required. Education is at a very low ebb; and, indeed, in no part of South Africa is civilization retrograding so much as among our unfortunate fellow-countrymen north of the Vaal River. To the want of proper educational and religious advantages must be attributed the treatment experienced by the excellent Livingstone and many other missionaries and European travellers in these regions.

158. *History.*—The country now called the Transvaal Republic was formerly densely inhabited by tribes of Betjouanas, who were driven out of it, reduced to bondage, or scattered by the terrible Zulu conqueror, Moselekatse, who, in turn, had to fly far to the north, beyond the Limpopo, before the muskets of the emigrant boers. The stream of emigration from the Cape Colony, Natal, and the Free State gradually led into this region all those who were indisposed to live under the forms of an old and settled Government; and here in 1848, they founded a sort of Alsatia, or country of refuge for malcontents, which they

declared a free and independent republic, under the presidency of Mr. A. Pretorius, who had strenuously opposed British rule in Natal and the Free State a few years before. By the latest accounts, the boers of the north-eastern parts and those of Leydenberg have separated from the southern part of the republic, and declared themselves an independent state. Since that period, the country has been far from settled, and party divisions prevail extensively; while the arts of civilization are every day more and more neglected. The system of government adopted is republican; a president, assisted by a volksraad, or council and heemraden. The community has been for many years deprived of educational advantages; and it may be supposed their ideas on religion, personal freedom of strangers, liberty of trade, &c., are not the most enlightened. Ministers of religion and schoolmasters are hardly to be met with; medical practitioners, except a few vile quacks, are not to be found. But owing to the impediments thrown in the way of travellers, very little accurate information as to the actual and real condition of these boers is obtainable.

159. *Climate.*—North of the Magaliesberg, the tropical nature of the climate begins to manifest itself, and severe fevers annually cut off many of European descent. The fly "tsetse," whose bite is death to the bovine and equine species, abounds in many parts, and renders travelling with horses and oxen difficult. Many very healthy localities, however, are found along the mountain ranges, and the boers are gradually crossing the mountains and settling on their eastern slope, towards Delagoa Bay, in a country called Commatie, which is reported to be healthy.

160. *Animals.*—The elephant, rhinoceros, and larger antelopes, formerly so abundant, and whose chase has been so vividly depicted in the pages of Harris, Gordon Cumming, and other travellers, are gradually disappearing, and retiring into the deserts and marshes north of the Limpopo. Crocodiles and a species of boa are found; but the difficulties thrown in the way of travellers by the boers are such, that a perfect investigation of the natural history of this part of South Africa, interesting as it may be, can hardly, for the present, be expected. The geology appears to present the same features as the northern parts of the Cape Colony, in the mural coronets of the mountain ranges, &c.; and large deposits of copper ore exist in the western part of the continuation of the Magaliesberg range, called the Chuanyane mountains, near Kolobeng.

REGIONS INHABITED BY NATIVE TRIBES.

CHAPTER XI.—KAFIRLAND PROPER, OR KAFFRARIA.

161. Kafirland, or the country of the Kafirs, formerly included all the coast region of South Africa east of the Cape Colony; but, since the formation of the Colony of Natal, it has been separated into two distinct divisions, namely, Kafirland Proper, between the Cape Colony and Natal, and Zululand, east of Natal, whose northern limits can hardly be defined. A high range of mountains parallel to the coast, and at an average distance of 120 miles from it, forms a distinct boundary, generally, between the native tribes speaking the Kafir language and those speaking the Sechuana and its dialects.

162. *Boundaries.*—Kafirland Proper comprises an area of about 25,000 square miles, and is bounded on the west by British Kaffraria and the division of Queen's Town; on the north-east by the Quathlamba mountains, which divide it from Basutoland; and on the east and north-east by the Colony of Natal; the ocean forms its south-eastern boundary.

163. *Surface.*—The surface is in general irregular, and the rivers run in deep valleys. Near the foot of the mountains are elevated plateaux, bare of wood, undulating, and well watered. These plains, however, being very cold in winter, are almost uninhabited. From the edge of these high plateaux we look down on the lowlands of the coast, a district about forty miles in width, and of a very broken and rugged character.

164. *Rivers.*—The principal rivers are the Umzimvobo, which, with its tributaries, the Tsetse and Tena, drains a large extent of country along the foot of the Quathlamba mountains; the Umtata, Bashee, Tsomo, and Umzimculu and its tributaries.

165. *Mountains.*—One or two ranges of mountains run parallel to the Quathlamba, from south-west to north-east; they are called the Matuana and Umtata mountains. Towards Natal, in particular, the country is extremely broken, being traversed by several rugged ranges of mountains, offshoots of the Quathlamba.

166. *Productions.*—The productions of Kafirland resemble those of British Kaffraria. Agricultural produce and cattle could be raised to any extent; and the coast region is said to be favourable for the growth of cotton and sugar. It is generally well watered and grassed. Large forests of valuable timber are

found along the coast. Hides, horns, and gum are now the principal articles of commerce.

167. *Population.*—Kafirland Proper has an exclusively Kafir population, of nomadic habits; and possesses no fixed town or villages. The principal tribes are the Tambookies or Abatembu, and Amagaleka Kafirs, next the Cape Colony; the Amaponda and Amabaxa, inhabiting the centre region, drained by the Umzimvobo River; and various broken tribes of Zulu Kafirs, along the Natal boundary. It is difficult even to make an approximation to the number of inhabitants, but they probably do not now exceed 100,000, living between the Colony and Natal. Some years ago the Amagaleka Kafirs, under the paramount chief Kreili, suffered much during a prevalent famine, and their tribes, at present, appear on the point of dissolution. In 1847, the Rev. H. Dugmore estimated their numbers at 70,000 souls; now, probably, the remnant of the tribe does not exceed 20,000. Lately a migration of Griquas took place from the Orange River to the unoccupied country called "No Man's Land," near the heads of the Umzimvobo.

168. *Manners.*—The habits of the Kafirs are predatory, and their pursuits chiefly pastoral. Corn, mealies, &c., are principally raised by the women, who also build their huts; and the men herd and milk the cattle. The system of government is patriarchal, under chiefs of tribes; and the succession, with some modifications, is hereditary. They practice polygamy, and use the rite of circumcision. Their religious ideas seem confused and indistinct, although they recognize a Supreme Being, as well as a malignant spirit. This latter belief gives rise to the practice of witchcraft and other degrading superstitions, which are greatly encouraged by the chiefs, for their own private and selfish purposes. The personal appearance of the Kafir is somewhat prepossessing; the men are generally well made, stout, and robust.

169. *Mission Stations.*—There are several mission stations of the Wesleyan community in Kafirland, at Clarkebury and Beechamwood, among the Tambookies; Butterworth, with the Amagalekas; Shawbury, with the Amabaxas; and Palmerston and Buntingville, with the Amapondas. There is also a mission station of the Church of England, called St. Mark's, at the chief Kreili's kraal, between the Indwe and Tsomo rivers.

170. *Zoology.*—Wild animals have been almost extirpated. A few elephants and buffaloes are still found in the forests of the Umzimvobo; and along the plains at the foot of the mountains, hartebeests and some other large antelopes, and a few ostriches, are occasionally met with.

171. *Climate.*—The climate is healthy, and differs little from that of British Kaffraria or Natal. In the naked and elevated plains near the mountains, the winters are very severe. Thunderstorms are frequent, accompanied, generally, by torrents of rain.

172. *Roads, Harbours, &c.*—The roads are merely beaten tracks across the country, which, owing to the many rivers with short courses running into the sea at right angles to the coast, are difficult to traverse. None of the rivers are navigable; but anchorage is found at Mazeppa and Shepstone Bays, and one or two other points along the coast.

CHAPTER XII.—REGIONS BEYOND NATAL, INHABITED BY KAFIR RACES.

173. *General Description.*—This immense region extends from the Utugela River, the eastern boundary of Natal, in latitude 29° 20′ probably, to Sofala and the valley of the Zambezi River, latitude 19°, which forms the apparent boundary between the Kafir tribes to the north and the negro races. The principal tribes inhabiting this region are the Amazulu, between Natal and Delagoa Bay, under the chief Umpanda; the Amazwazi, north and west of Delagoa Bay; the Amahute, north-east of it; and the Amatabele, under the renowned chief Moselekatse, who have extended into the regions west of the mountains forming the south slope of the Zambezi valley, and there conquered the Betjouana tribes who inhabit part of the country drained by its tributaries. The coast region of this portion of Kafirland possesses a tropical climate, and is in many places very unhealthy. North of Delagoa Bay it is very little known.

174. *Rivers.*—The principal rivers are the Umfolozi or St. Lucia; the Manice; the Ouri or Limpopo, the position of whose embouchure on the coast is still uncertain; Rio de Sofala, Imhambane, &c. None of these are navigable for any practical purposes, except, perhaps, the Manice, which disembogues in Delagoa Bay.

175. *Mountains.*—A continuation of the Drakensberg mountains, described in the account of Natal, runs parallel to the coast and divides this part of Kafirland from the Transvaal Republic and Betjouanaland. A large secondary range, called the Lebombo, runs nearly parallel to the range, but nearer the coast, from the mouth of the Umfolozi to the north of Delagoa Bay.

176. *Population.*—The population consists of the Kafir tribes above described, whose numbers were, some years ago, imperfectly estimated at two millions. At Delagoa Bay, Imhambane, and Sofala, are Portuguese settlements, where a few half-caste Portuguese and Mulattoes reside.

177. *Productions and Commerce.*—Ivory, skins, feathers, horns, and hides are the principal productions of this immense region, the capabilities of which are very imperfectly known. The principal port is Delagoa Bay, although report says an excellent harbour exists near the mouth of St. Lucia River.

178. *Zoology.*—The elephant, lion, buffalo, giraffe, rhinoceros, &c., are found in this region, as well as pythons, alligators, &c. Its natural history is, however, very imperfectly developed, and presents rich fields for the exploration of naturalists.

179. *Climate.*—In the interior, near the mountains, the climate is healthy. Along the coast, malaria is prevalent; and the Delagoa fever is greatly dreaded. This alone has prevented the emigrant farmers from settling in this otherwise rich and very fertile country. Immense marshes exist along the coast north of Delagoa to the delta of the Zambezi.

180. *History.*—The tradition of the Kafir tribes, generally, indicates a pressure of these tribes from the north on the Hottentot nations living south of them. The country of the most powerful Kafir nation, that of the Zulus, appears, about thirty-seven years ago, under the rule of the terrible Chaka, to have been a crater from which poured the horrors of war in all directions on the other Kafir and Betjouana tribes; and the absolute depopulation of the immense plains of the region now known as the Orange Free State, by sheer extermination of its inhabitants, occurred at this period. Chaka was murdered by his successor, Dingaan, and the latter proved himself little less bloody; but, coming in contact with the emigrant farmers from the Cape Colony, in 1837, the guns of the latter broke up the strength of the once terrible Amazulu, and they are no longer an object of dread to their neighbours, although their own intestine wars are often very bloody. Another dreaded chief, Moselekatse, having also experienced severe proofs of the prowess of the boers, now dwells far to the north, separated by a wide tract of desert country from his dangerous neighbours; and carries on war, on a small scale, with the Makalolo and other Betjouana tribes living near the Zambezi. It must be remembered that the intestine wars among these native tribes, although locally interesting, seldom produce causes weighty enough to make them matter of history.

181. *Laws.*—Generally speaking, the laws and customs prevalent amongst the Kafir tribes living on the borders of the Cape Colony are found existing, with certain modifications, amongst all the other tribes, as far as they are known. The principal difference observed is that the power of the Kafir chiefs living beyond Natal is more despotic, and less restrained by their councillors, than that possessed by the chiefs of Kafirland Proper.

182. *Language.*—The language spoken by all the different Kafir tribes is, in its present state, that used by the Zulu Kafirs. It distinguishes only two dialects—the Ukukuluma or high language, and the Amalala or low; the first used by the Zulu, Abatembu, and Amaxosa Kafirs; the last by the tribes of Natal, the Amabaxa, and frontier Fingoes. Among the frontier tribes the language has been somewhat corrupted, by the adoption of some of the clicks of the Hottentot language. The language, the affinities of which have been latterly much studied by Dr. Bleek and the Rev. Mr. Döhne, is sonorous and well adapted for rhetorical purposes, distinguished for its minute accuracy, fulness of expression, and copiousness of form; and it is supposed that it was once the language of a race possessing a far higher degree of cultivation than that exhibited by the Kafirs of the present day. By the labours of the missionaries it has now become a written language, but its grammar presents many difficult and complicated forms.

REGIONS INHABITED BY HOTTENTOT RACES.

CHAPTER XIII.—GREAT NAMAQUALAND.

183. *Distribution.*—The Great Namaqua tribes may be esteemed the most perfect existing types of the original Hottentot race; and they are found more or less mixed with Bastards (Mulattoes, or mixed races), inhabiting all the north-western portions of South Africa, from the Orange River (and even south of it, in Little Namaqualand) to the borders of the Damara country, in latitude 23° south; and to the eastward, as far as the edge of the Kalihari desert, being the region known by the name of Great Namaqualand, in length about 450 miles, and 230 miles in width, having an area of about 100,000 square miles.

184. *Description of Country.*—This region is drained by the periodical and seldom running stream, called the Oup, Borradaile, or Great Fish River, which, rising in the high table lands

of the Damara country, runs nearly due south, a distance of about 450 miles, into the Orange River, which it enters, about 50 miles from its mouth. It is generally, except in its northern parts, a most barren region. Its coast, bounded by the South Atlantic, is sandy and waterless; and it is only along the dry channels of the river beds that its scanty population find subsistence, as water is generally found by digging in their gravelly covering, and grass abounds along their banks. Towards the north, the country improves; and there, for the last few years, the greater part of the Namaqua tribes, under several petty chiefs, have located themselves, carrying on a predatory warfare with their more gentle and quiet neighbours, the Damaras and Ovampos, who are rich in cattle. Cultivation is, in the greater part of Namaqualand, quite out of the question, except near the fountains which form the heads of the rivers; and the tribes roam about with their cattle from place to place, according as pasturage and water is plentiful. The description of Little Namaqualand by Mr. C. D. Bell, the Colonial Surveyor-General, in which he depicts half of it as a dreary waste of heavy sand, and half of it a howling wilderness of rugged mountain chains and peaks, with extensive tracts, where no blade of grass and no drop of water can be found, equally applies to the greater part of this region.

185. *Rivers.*—The Oup and its branches are the only rivers, if we except certain beds which form the Nosap, a periodical stream draining the Kalihari, and running nearly parallel to the Oup, entering the Orange River, near the great falls of Aukrabies, about 200 miles from its mouth. Although water may generally be found in these beds, yet, owing to the almost constant drought, it seldom flows. Various fountains, many of them hot springs, occur in several localities.

186. *Mountains.*—The valley of the Oup is bounded on each side by ranges of flat-topped, barren mountains; those on the east side losing themselves in the Great Kalihari desert; and those on the west side, running down into low ranges of sand-hills, parallel to the shore. Along the Orange River the country is fearfully rugged.

187. *Productions.*—This barren region, however, appears favourable for the rearing of cattle; at least, large troops from the north of the Orange River are brought into the Cape Colony, although report declares that they are generally the produce of the forays of the Namaqua tribes on the Damaras living north of them. A little ivory, some ostrich feathers, and gum, are also received, together with copper ore, which has been lately worked

near the sources of the Oup River, by colonial companies. Guano has been found in considerable quantities at Ichaboe and one or two other little islets on the coast. Fish also abounds, and is caught in abundance at Sandwich Harbour and Angra Pequina.

188. *Population.*—The population of Great Namaqualand consists of pure Namaquas, under the chiefs Abram, Jonker Africander, &c.; bastard Hottentots; and a few wandering Bushmen; and in all, by a rough calculation, does not exceed 40,000 souls. Several mission stations, principally belonging to the Rhenish Society, at Bethany, Bethesda, &c., have been established among the native tribes, but with indifferent success. The Wesleyan community have a station at Nisbet Bath, a hot spring about thirty miles north of the Orange River, and one or two out-stations.

189. It may be interesting here to observe the northern progress of the Hottentot nation since the landing of the white man in South Africa. The chief Ameral, now living on the northern frontier of Great Namaqualand, is descended from chiefs who formerly grazed their flocks on the pastures of Table Mountain, nearly 1,000 miles south of his present kraal.

190. *Roads and Communications.*—Owing to the dry and sterile nature of the country, travelling is attended with much difficulty. The interior can, however, be easily reached from Walvisch Bay, latitude 23°. On the coast, there is good anchorage, but little fresh water, at Sandwich Harbour, Angra Pequina, and several other places on the coast.

191. *Climate.*—The climate of Namaqualand is in extremes,—in summer, insupportably hot, and the nights cold; in winter, the cold is often very severe. It is intensely dry, and subject to drought of years' duration. The water is generally brackish; and, on the whole, the climate, although not positively unhealthy, makes a continuous residence very trying to European constitutions. In the northern parts, low fevers are sometimes very prevalent. The rainy season commences in November and ends in May, and the rains appear to become more uncertain and scanty as we proceed from north to south; the country in the neighbourhood of the Orange River is peculiarly subject to intense droughts.

192. *Zoology.*—Lions, elephants, giraffes, and rhinoceroses are found in the north-eastern parts, skirting the Kalihari. Snakes and scorpions abound, and are very poisonous. The gemsbok, eland, koodoo, and other large antelopes are numerous. The ostrich is also common.

193. *Botany, &c.*—The botany, geology, &c., of this extensive region is very imperfectly known. The "vnaras" and "vaus" are two native fruits, much prized, found growing on the sand-hills near Walvisch Bay. The geological features appear to resemble those of the northern part of the division of Little Namaqualand, presenting large surfaces of granite, quartz rock, and gneiss, and exhibiting the same indications of deposits of copper ore.

194. *Language.*—The language spoken by the different Namaqua tribes and other Hottentot races has always been considered a most uncouth and barbarous tongue, in consequence of the difficult clicks in which it abounds. The Rev. Mr. Tindall, however, says its construction is most beautiful and regular. It has been reduced by the missionaries to grammatical rules, and portions of the Scriptures have been printed in it. The different Koranna and Bushmen dialects vary very much; and frequently the tribes speaking them can hardly understand each other. The Namaqua language is still used in the Cape Colony, in Little Namaqualand, by the wandering tribes living in the northern parts of the divisions of Calvinia and Beaufort, and in the different large mission establishments, such as Mamre, Genadendal, Hankey, Bethelsdorp, &c. The original language of the Hottentots is nearly extinct, and is now rarely used save by a few very old people.

CHAPTER XIV.—KORANNAS AND BUSHMEN.

195. *Korannas.*—The Korannas are a nearly pure Hottentot race, inferior in appearance and intelligence to the Great Namaquas and Griquas, and speaking a dialect of the Hottentot language. They are found leading a wandering pastoral life, along the banks of the Orange and Vaal Rivers, or living in temporary kraals or hamlets in their vicinity, or seeking subsistence by hunting. They do but little tillage and chiefly depend on their herds.

196. *Bushmen.*—The Bosjesmans or Bushmen, called, in their native tongue, Quaiquæ, are a still poorer and more degraded tribe of the same race. The miserable-looking specimens which are from time to time exhibited in Europe give rise to that contemptible notion, which is generally prevalent, of the stunted physical and intellectual powers of the Hottentot.

197. *Localities.*—The Bushmen are found scattered over South Africa, in small tribes or families, from the north of the

Karree mountains, in the division of Beaufort, and north of the Hantam, in the Calvinia division, to the bank of the Zambezi, north of Lake Ngami; and from the rugged valleys near the sources of the Orange River on the east, to the Atlantic Ocean on the west. Even the inhabitants of the Cape Colony are accustomed to see, in the Bushmen living near them, a pigmy race, possessing the true Hottentot features, hair, and certain other personal peculiarities, to which it is unnecessary here to advert; but advancing north, into the Kalihari desert, the Bushman improves in stature, and presents a very fair specimen of humanity. The southern limits of the race are tolerably well known, but not so the northern. Some would even suppose the existence of the race as far north as the valley of the Nile.

198. *Manners and Customs.*—The Bushmen use, generally, the bow and poisoned arrow. They capture game by pitfalls, poisoned water, and other stratagems. They live either in caves in the mountains or in huts made with mats of the most fragile nature; they never cultivate, except, perhaps, a little dacha or wild hemp (their opium), for smoking; gorge on animal food when they can get it; otherwise they devour bulbs, wateruintjes, ants' eggs, locusts, and any other food they can get; have a very indistinct idea of a Supreme Being, and a more indistinct one of *meum* and *tuum*, as far as sheep and cattle are concerned. They speak various dialects of the Hottentot language, but a Bushman from the Quathlamba mountains would hardly understand one from the coast of the Atlantic. When the Cape was first settled, the Bushman tribes, although even then predatory, were found as far south as Riebeck's Kasteel, under the name of Sonquas; and the strange paintings in their rock-caves are found in nearly every part of the Colony.

199. *Predatory Habits.*—The Natal colonists still complain of some predatory tribes of these wanderers, who live in the upper valleys of the Orange River. In the Cape Colony, there are still a few to be found in the northern part of the Clanwilliam, Beaufort, and Colesberg divisions; also some in the north-eastern angle of the Queen's Town division, near he sources of the Indwe River.

CHAPTER XV.—GRIQUAS AND GRIQUALAND.

200. *Griqualand.*—Griqualand, or the territory inhabited by races of mixed Hottentot and European blood, includes the region along the Orange River and around its junction with the

Vaal; being thus interposed between the Colony on the one side, and Betjouanaland and the Free State on the other.

201. *Description of Surface.*—Along the Orange River, before its junction with the Vaal, the country is dry and barren in the extreme, except in the immediate vicinity of the stream. Wandering hordes of Korannas and Bushmen, who lead a very miserable and precarious existence, are generally found here. Near the junction of the Orange River with the Vaal, and to the east of it, the country improves, and is equal, if not superior, to any of the north-eastern parts of the Cape Colony, especially for sheep-farming. Here the Griquas, under the chief Waterboer, are principally settled. Those under Adam Kok, formerly settled here, have now removed to No Man's Land. Many of them were very wealthy at the time of their removal from this country. The boundary between the Griqua territory and the Free State Republic is rather difficult to define.

202. *Population.*—The Griquas are the descendants of the Dutch boers settled along the northern districts of the Colony and their Hottentot slaves. They were collected in the region they now occupy, about fifty years ago, by the London missionaries, Read and Anderson. They are a tall, athletic, good-looking race, of a light olive colour, indolent and careless of the future, but generally good-natured and hospitable. They are fond of hunting and exploring, and occasionally predatory in their habits. They generally speak a debased patois of the Dutch language, and seldom use any of the Hottentot dialects. An extensive migration of them has recently taken place to an unoccupied region called "No Man's Land."

203. *Towns and Villages.*—The principal villages of the Griquas, which were also formerly stations of the London Missionary Society, now are Campbellsdorp and Griqua Town, west of the Vaal River, the seats of the chief Waterboer.

204. *Climate.*—The climate of the country inhabited by the Griquas is healthy, and similar to that of the north-eastern division of the Cape Colony and the Free State.

205. In concluding this notice of the Hottentot races, we must observe that so much has the original stem been corrupted by an intermixture of European, Negro, or Kafir blood, that the sheepskin-clad, entrail-adorned savages of Kolben and Sparrman must now be sought in the wastes of the Kalihari and in the rugged and inaccessible valleys of the sources of the Orange River. Year after year, the type of the original Hottentot is gradually assuming the semi-civilized state of the colonial

Bastard or the independent Griqua; and it does not require much prescience to foretell, that, within the compass of a comparatively small space of time, the wild Bushman of South Africa will be reckoned in the same predicament as the Dodo, Dinormis, and other lately extinct families of the animal kingdom.

CHAPTER XVI.—REGIONS INHABITED BY BETJOUANA TRIBES.

206. *Boundaries.*—Betjouanaland comprehends that portion of Central South Africa which lies between the Kalihari desert, on the west; the Boer Republics, on the east; on the south, Griqualand and the Cape Colony; and on the north, the regions surrounding Lake Ngami and the valley of the Zambezi. The area may be roughly estimated at 200,000 square miles.

207. *Description of Surface.*—The eastern part of Betjouanaland may be considered as a rather rugged region, intersected with ranges of low hills, and draining itself into the Limpopo basin, while to the west it loses itself in the arid plains of the Kalihari desert; the water-shed line, separating the waters flowing into the Orange from those of the Limpopo and Zambezi, traverses Betjouanaland from north-west to south-east, and all the rivers south and west of it flow into the Orange River. To the north, the country is almost a dead level, at a height of about 2,500 feet above the sea, so that it is often difficult to determine in what direction many of the large anastomosing streams connected with Lake Ngami, the Chobe, and Lyambe or Zambezi, flow. To the north-east a high range of mountains, called Matoppo, separates the river systems of the Limpopo and Zambezi; and their northern slopes are occupied by the Amatabele Kafirs, under Moselekatse, who enslaved or drove away the Betjouana tribes originally inhabiting them.

208. *Rivers.*—In Betjouanaland the lines of water-shed between the Limpopo and Orange Rivers meet, and its various water-courses are all tributaries of these rivers. Many rivers of considerable size rise in the Cashan and Chouanye mountains, on the north side, and run into the Limpopo; such as the Mariqua, Ngotuane, Sirotume, &c. From the south side of the same range rise the Harte, Malapo, and other tributaries to the Orange River, which generally lose themselves in the sands of the southern Kalihari, and only flow after heavy rains. From the Matoppo mountains, other large periodical streams—

the Shashi, Shashane—run south into the Limpopo; while the country north of these mountains is drained by many streams which run into the Zambezi. In the north-west, latitude 21° N. longitude 26° E., is found a considerable body of fresh water, called Lake Ngami, out of which flows, sluggishly, a large stream, called the Zouga or D'Zuga, which, after a course of 250 miles, is finally lost in a chain of immense salt-pans or vleis, called Ntetwe. Entering Lake Ngami at its north-western angle is another large stream, rising far to the north-west, called the Tonke or Teoge; while a large stream from the north, called the Tamunakle, joins the Zouga, a few miles east from Ngami, and is believed to connect its waters with those of the Chobe, a tributary to the Zambezi. But the geography of all these rivers is as yet wrapt in much obscurity; and it seems even that the very direction in which they flow depends, in some measure, on the local rains far in the interior. Sufficient observations have, however, been made to connect the system of Ngami with that of the Zambezi.

209. *Mountains.*—The mountains of Betjouanaland are offshoots of the Magaliesberg or Cashan range, running east and west, and dividing, as has been observed, the waters of the Orange and Vaal Rivers from those of the Limpopo. North of these mountains are various scattered groups of hills, fringing the east side of the Kalihari desert; and to the south are also several ranges of hills, running north and south, extending to the Orange River from north of Kuruman, called the Langeberg. North-east of the Limpopo is a high range of mountains, called Matoppo, from which flow, from north and south, several large streams into the Zambezi and Limpopo Rivers. This part of the country is as yet but imperfectly known. The whole region towards the north-west, as far as Lake Ngami and the Zambezi, is one immense plain, in some places densely wooded.

210. *Lakes or Salt-pans.*—A distinguishing feature of the northern part of Betjouanaland are immense tracts of country, which are sometimes, by heavy rains or inundations, converted into large lakes, but oftener exhibit the spectacle of dry vleis covered with an incrustation of salt. One described to the author is about 100 miles long and 30 wide; and Dr. Livingstone describes the Ntetwe pans as 100 miles long and 10 or 12 wide. These large basins receive the drainage, in some cases, of a large extent of desert country; but the excessive evaporation keeps them nearly always dry.

211. *Population.*—The inhabitants of these regions nearly all speak the Sechuana language and its dialects, and are composed of several distinct tribes, under the rule of their respective chiefs, besides numerous wandering Bakalihari, or poor Betjouanas, equivalent to the Bushmen of Hottentot tribes. The Betjouanas are, comparatively, a timid race, and inferior to the Kafirs in physical development. They may be divided into the following principal tribes: (1) Makololo, acknowledging Sekeletu as paramount chief, inhabiting the regions north of Lake Ngami, to 15° of south latitude. (2) Basuto, including the Batau, Baputi, Makolokue, &c., living to the south, in what is called Basutoland, &c., acknowledging the chief Moshesh as paramount. (See Basutoland.) (3) Different tribes, living in subjection to the emigrant boers, east of the Limpopo, as Butlou, Bapori, Bapo, Bapiri, &c. (4) The Bakalihari, or western branch, including the Bamangwato, under the chief Sechomi, and the Bangwaketse, under Secheli, on the eastern edge of Kalihari; the Batuana, under Lechetabele, near Lake Ngami; the Bakuka, under Debebe, north-west of Lake Ngami, on the Tonke River; the Batlapi, Bamatlaro, Bakaa, Bakalihari, &c. Of all these tribes, the best armed and most powerful are the Basutos, under their semi-civilized chief, Moshesh. There are, besides, living in Betjouanaland, various tribes of negro descent, called Makalaka, Bushmen of Hottentot origin, &c. No correct approximations to the number of inhabitants can be given. The Betjouanas are an ingenious people, and possess more constructive ability than any other South African people. Their houses exhibit much ingenuity and convenience; they manufacture arms and ornaments in iron, copper, and wood; make neat skin mantles, &c.

212. *Mission Stations and Villages.*—The principal mission station and native town in the Betjouana country is Kuruman or New Lataku, at a fine fountain in a sheltered valley, latitude 27° 20′, longitude 24° 10′, about 150 miles north of the colonial boundary. This place is the residence of the chief of the Batlapi tribe. It was founded in 1816 by the London Missionary Society, and here laboured the Rev. J. Campbell, and here labours still the patriarch Moffat. Kolobeng, another mission station, about 250 miles to the north-west, is the original station of Dr. Livingstone, and the residence of the chief Secheli. Linyanti, on the Chobe, is a large native town, and the residence of the chief Sekeletu. There are other mission stations at Mabotsa, Lekatlong, &c., generally supported by the London Society, who have formed a new station at

Moselekatse's residence, north of the Matoppo mountains, in latitude 19° 40′.

213. *Productions.*—The chief productions of Betjouanaland are ivory, hides, riems and whips of sea-cow hide, wax, skin mantles called karosses, and cattle. These are collected by traders from the Colony, who barter for them English goods.

214. *Zoology and Geology.*—All the larger African animals are found in the remote parts of these regions in immense numbers, including elephants, rhinoceroses, giraffes, sable antelopes, koodoos, &c. The prevalence of the poisonous fly, called "tsetse," renders many parts totally impassable by cattle or horses. A vast field is still open for naturalists in this part of South Africa. Of the geology, nothing very certain is known; but the whole of the region is supposed to form a continuation of Mr. Bain's lacustrine system of the Cape Colony.

215. *Climate.*—The climate of the region inhabited by the Betjouana tribes is thus described by Mr. Moffat: "The climate in the countries from the borders of the Cape Colony to 25° north latitude and 24° east longitude is very similar. The winds which prevail, especially in the higher regions, are from the west and north-west. Cold, withering winds frequently blow from the south during the winter months, in which rain rarely falls, and never with a south wind. In spring (the end of August), the northerly gales commence, and blow daily with great violence from about 10 a.m. till sunset, when a still, serene night succeeds. During the prevalence of these winds, which continue till November, when the air becomes modified by thunder-storms, the atmosphere appears as if dense with smoke, reaching as high as the clouds. This appearance is occasioned by the light particles of dust, brought from the sandy plains of the Kalihari desert, which is so exquisitely fine that it penetrates seams and cracks which are almost impervious to water. These winds may, with great propriety, be called sandy monsoons. They are so dry as to affect the skin very disagreeably; and the progress of exsiccation goes on rapidly, producing in the human frame extreme languor and febrile symptoms. Towards the latter end of the windy season, the thirsty cattle may frequently be seen turning their heads northward to sniff the aqueous blast, as their instinctive powers catch the scent which the green herbage sends from the tropical regions. The wind is rarely from the east; but when it is, we expect rain, which will sometimes continue for days, and is what we denominate land rains, being without thunder. The winds, I have learned from inquiry, come from within the

tropics where rain has fallen, and the cool air thereby produced rushes south, over the plains, filling up the space caused by the rarefaction of the air consequent on the approach of the sun to the tropic of Caprieorn. The more boisterous these winds are, the more reason we have to expect rain. They cannot extend to a very great height, as the thunder-storms which follow, and which often commence with a small cloud in the opposite direction, increasing into mountains of snow with a yellow tinge, pursue an opposite course. These are preceded by a dead stillness, which continues till the tornado bursts upon us with awful violence, and the clouds have discharged their watery treasures. The higher mountains, like masses with their edges exactly defined, go in one direction, while the feelers or loose misty vapour beneath, convulsed and rolling in fearful velocity, are going in another; and the peals of thunder are such as to make the very earth tremble." Serumairi, or thunder without clouds, is often heard in this region. Dr. Livingstone says: "The whole of the country adjacent to the desert, from Kuruman to Kolobeng, and beyond, as far as the latitude of Lake Ngami, is remarkable for its great salubrity of climate. Not only the natives, but Europeans whose constitutions have been impaired by an Indian climate, find this tract of country both healthy and restorative; and, were it not for the great expense of such a trip, I should have no hesitation in recommending the borders of the Kalihari desert as admirably suited for all patients having pulmonary complaints." Towards and beyond Lake Ngami, however, and advancing into the tropic, as water becomes more abundant, fever and ague are, in certain seasons of the year, very prevalent. Except where modified by mountain ranges and other local causes, the above description is applicable to all parts of Central South Africa, south of the tropic of Caprieorn, and north of the great mountain range.

CHAPTER XVII.—BASUTOLAND.

216. The term Basutoland is now generally applied to a small but remarkable portion of South Africa, inhabited by a powerful tribe of Betjouanas, called Abasutos, under the paramount chief Moshesh, and occupying a difficult, and in many places almost inaccessible, mountain region, where the head waters rise that form the Caledon, Vaal, and Orange Rivers, which run, under the name of Gariep or Orange,

into the Atlantic Ocean; and the Umzimvobo, Umzimculu, and Utugela, draining Natal and Kafirland, into the Indian Ocean.

217. *Boundaries.*—This region is surrounded on the west and north by the Orange Free State; while on the south-east an immense double chain of lofty mountains, called the Maluti, divides it from Kafirland Proper and Natal. It comprises an area of about 15,000 square miles.

218. *Surface.*—The high plains of the Orange Free State, as they approach the mountains, become broken by numerous flat-topped basaltic hills. After crossing the Caledon River, these hills again change gradually into high elevated plains or terraces, from which rise the serrated summits of the Maluti or Blue Mountains, an elevated range which divides the valley of the Caledon River from that of the Orange. The Orange River valley, in its upper part, is a frightful ravine, almost inaccessible; and is bounded on its opposite side by the Quathlamba mountains, which separate it from Kafirland and Natal, or the coast region. As yet, no practicable pass has been discovered across this range to shorten the distance to the Free State and Natal. The culminating point of these mountains is called by the French missionaries Mont aux Sources, and is probably 10,000 feet above the sea, presenting a precipitous face towards the coast.

219. *Rivers.*—The Caledon and Orange Rivers, as well as those of the Wilge and other tributaries of the Vaal River, rise in the Mont aux Sources, and their upper valleys are included in Basutoland. After a course of about 250 miles they meet and form the Nu Gariep, which, after a further course of 250 miles, is joined by the Vaal, forming the Ky Gariep, or Great Orange River, to the ocean. After the melting of the snow, or after the summer thunder-storms, these rivers are swollen into streams of considerable volume. They are not, however, navigable, except for short distances.

220. *Mountains.*—The mountains of Basutoland all belong to the great Quathlamba chain, which forms the natural boundary between the coast region and the interior of South Africa. A range running nearly at right angles with the Mont aux Sources, called the Wittebergen, separates the northern part of Basutoland from the district of Harrismith, in the Free State.

221. *Population.*—Basutoland is rather densely populated by the remains of various Betjouana tribes, known under the general name of Abasutos, who, during the devastating wars of Chaka, Dingaan, and Moselekatse, took refuge in the mountain

fastnesses, and between 1824-30 began to rally round Moshesh, a native chief of great energy and force of character. Mixed up with these Basutos are also remains of tribes of refugee Zulu Kafirs, Korannas, Bushmen, &c.; and up to this day Moshesh has succeeded in preserving his independence, and making himself feared and respected by his neighbours of the Free State. The last war carried on between Moshesh and the Boers was fortunately terminated by both parties agreeing to submit their quarrel to the judgment of the late Governor, Sir G. Grey, and agreeing upon a new boundary line to the west. Another dispute, however has arisen since; and, although supposed to have been settled by the mediation of His Excellency Sir P. E. Wodehouse, has resulted in hostilities which had not terminated when these sheets were passing through the press.

222. *Mission Stations and Villages.*—Numerous mission stations have been established by the Paris and Wesleyan Missionary Societies in this region; and the missionaries have proved of immense service to Moshesh, in enabling him to advance in the knowledge and practice of civilization. The principal French stations are Beersheba, Thaba Moriah, Hebron, and Bethesda. Many of these suffered considerably during the last war; and in that now waging, their removal has been voted by the Free State legislature. The chief Wesleyan mission stations are Umpekani, Umperani, and Thaba Unchu. Moshesh's chief village is called Thaba Bossiou, and is situated at the summit of a high, flat-topped hill near the sources of the Little Caledon River. Thaba Unchu, near the boundary of the Free State, is also a large native town. Large native villages are generally found in the neighbourhood of the different mission stations.

223. *Geology.*—The geological features of the country resemble those of the Quathlamba range and the Free State. No minerals have been found in any quantity. Agates abound in the upper waters of the Caledon and Orange Rivers.

CHAPTER XVIII.—DAMARA AND OVAMPOLAND, OR OTJIHERERO.

224. *Description of Inhabitants.*—North of Great Namaqualand, and extending along the coast of the Atlantic as far as the Cuanene River in about 17° south latitude, lie the regions inhabited by tribes called Damaras and Ovampos, speaking a

language called Otjiherero; although remotely belonging to, yet not understood by, the Betjouana races. These tribes appear to form a connecting link between the Negro nations of Loando and Benguela, and the Betjouana and Kafir races of South Africa. There is also found in this region a tribe somewhat resembling the Bakalihari, or poor Betjouanas, being a Negro race speaking the Namaqua language. This tribe, like the Bushmen, are of predatory habits, and live in the most mountainous and inaccessible parts of the country. They are sometimes called Berg or Mountain Damaras, to distinguish them from the more civilized Damaras of the plains, or Cattle Damaras.

225. *Description of Country.*—Damara and Ovampoland, or the land of the Otjiherero, present a belt of sandy country between the coast and the high inhabited table lands. Ovampoland is separated from Damaraland by a broad belt of country covered with dense thorny thickets of acacias and camel-thorns. The northern boundary is the Cuanene River, which separates it from the Portuguese territory; to the east the country loses itself in the desert. There are no navigable rivers, and few anchorages along the coast north of Walvisch Bay, in latitude 22° 40′. Damaraland is easily reached from Walvisch Bay. It was first visited by Sir J. Alexander, in 1838, who reached it overland from the Colony; and Ovampoland by Messrs. Galton and Andersson in 1850. The principal rivers are the Swakop, Kusip, and their branches. The height of the table land near their sources is about 6,000 feet, from whence the country slopes gently to the east, towards Lake Ngami and the Kalihari desert; many of the peaks of the mountain region reach a height of 8,000 feet above the sea. Of the coast region north of Walvisch Bay very little is known. The crossing of South Africa, from east to west, through this region, was first performed by Messrs. Chapman and Edwards, in 1851–4, from Natal to Walvisch Bay. C. J. Andersson was the first European traveller who reached Lake Ngami from the west coast, where he met Messrs. Green, Chapman, and other explorers, who had reached it in an opposite direction. The country north-east of Ovampoland abounds in elephants, rhinoceroses, and giraffes.

226. *Mission Stations.*—Several German mission stations have been for some years established at Otjimbinque, Barmen, and Schmelin's Hope; but the repeated attacks of the predatory Namaqua tribes, under Jonker Afrikander and other chiefs, have, for some years back, involved all Damaraland in distress and confusion.

227. *Climate.*—The table land of Ovampoland and Damaraland lies high; and the climate is very healthy, and even cold in winter. Near the coast, low fever is common. It seldom rains in the coast region, which is a very desolate one, and nearly destitute of water.

228. *Productions.*—Copper ore abounds in Damaraland, and some mines are now working there. Cattle, ivory, and hides are the principal other productions. Large numbers of horned cattle annually reach the Cape Colony from these regions.

229. *Natural History.*—All the large game are found in these regions. Immense forests prevail, consisting of the larger acacias and camel-thorns. Whales abound on the coast.

230. *Population.*—The Ovampo tribes are described by Andersson as of a very dark complexion, tall and robust, but remarkably ugly, and scantily attired; their looks betoken independence and determination; they have no idea of using oxen or beasts of burthen, but themselves carry heavy loads. Their paramount chief, Nangoro, has evinced decided symptoms of hostility to the visits of Europeans. The people are described, however, as honest, industrious, and hospitable; they carefully tend the old and infirm, in contradistinction to many other South African tribes. The Ovampo tribes are not entirely pastoral, but cultivate much corn. The Damaras are a stout, athletic nation, very dirty in their habits; they are generally armed with the bow and arrow. They are a pastoral people, and have no notions of permanent habitations; they live in a constant state of warfare with the Hill Damaras or Ghoudamoup on the one hand, and the Great Namaqua or Bastard Hottentots on the other. The Hill Damaras are supposed to be a Negro tribe, who have adopted the old Hottentot language; they live in the inaccessible hills of the southern parts of Damaraland, and are a pastoral and predatory race.

CHAPTER XIX.—KALIHARI DESERT, AND CENTRAL REGIONS NORTH-WEST OF LAKE NGAMI.

231. All the regions on the east and west of South Africa have now been described; but there is yet a vast central and nearly uninhabited tract, lying between Betjouanaland on the east, and Great Namaqualand and Damaraland on the west, and having the Orange River for its southern boundary, which has before been alluded to as the Kalihari desert, but which is worthy of a closer description.

232. This desert may be deemed the continuation, north of the Orange River, of the sterile region called Bushmanland, which extends south of the Orange River to the Hantam and Kareebergen. It is a nearly waterless, sandy, but in many places well wooded, tract, intersected by dry watercourses. Livingstone describes it as remarkable for little water and considerable vegetation, and therefore very different from the karroos of the Colony, which have neither water nor vegetation, unless after heavy rains.

233. The probable reason why so little rain falls in this region is, that the prevailing wind of most of the interior of South Africa is easterly, with a little southerly. The moisture taken up by the atmosphere from the Indian Ocean is deposited on the hilly slopes of the coast mountain ranges, and when the moving mass of air reaches the verge of the great heated plains of the interior, the ascending heat gives it a greater capacity for retaining all its remaining humidity, and few showers can be given to the middle and western lands, in consequence of the increased hygrometric power; in the same manner as the heat of Table Valley, acting on the south-east wind that falls over the edges of the mountain, renders our summer season nearly rainless, unless the wind blows from the west.

234. No mountains or elevations of any considerable height are found in the Kalihari, the general level of which may be 3,000 feet above the sea; but many low ranges of hills are found. The soil is generally a light sand, resting on a bed of calcareous tufa. In this are found springs, which the wandering natives are generally careful to conceal.

235. *Rivers.*—The desert is drained, to the south, by the channels of the Nosap, Maloppo, and other branches of the Orange River. On the east side, the drainage flows into the Limpopo. The river beds are generally waterless, and distinguished by groves of mimosa thorn on their banks.

236. *Vegetable Productions.*—The Kalihari abounds in grass and various tuberous-rooted creepers; but the most useful production is the "kengwe," or wild water-melon. Animals of every sort and name feed on it,—even lions, hyenas, and jackals. The plant is of two kinds, sweet and bitter; and without it this desert would, in many places, be impassable, as these melons are full of a rich and refreshing juice. Andersson found immense forests of thorn trees in the northern parts.

237. *Population.*—The population consists of a few wandering Bushmen and Bakalihari. The former live in the desert

by choice, the latter by compulsion. The former never cultivate the soil, nor rear any animals, except some miserable dogs; the Bakalihari cultivate gardens where they can, and rear small herds of goats, and obtain supplies of tobacco, &c., by the manufacture of karosses from the skins of the smaller animals, which here abound. They generally keep the fountains concealed, and have so-called "sucking places" in many parts of the desert, from which water is drawn by a reed. In many of the intestine wars of South Africa, the Betjouana tribes have had to take refuge in this desert, which has often proved a grave to their pursuers.

238. *Climate.*—The climate is nearly similar to Betjouanaland, and perfectly healthy; but it very seldom rains.

239. *Zoology.*—The elephant, giraffe, and rhinoceros are found in the northern parts, after heavy rains. Millions of springboks issue periodically from the Kalihari to the grassy plains of the Free State and Cape Colony. Small rodentia and jackals abound, from whose skins the karosses manufactured by the natives are generally made.

240. *Roads.*—The desert has been crossed from west to east by Messrs. C. J. Andersson, Chapman, Baines, Cator, &c.; and Griqua traders sometimes pass from Griqua Town to Damaraland. Of the central parts little is known. In 1852, Messrs. Shelley and Orpen attempted to penetrate to the westward from Kuruman; and, after making a large circuit, had eventually to return, from want of water. In 1856, R. Moffat travelled along its southern edge, on his return from Little Namaqualand to Kuruman.

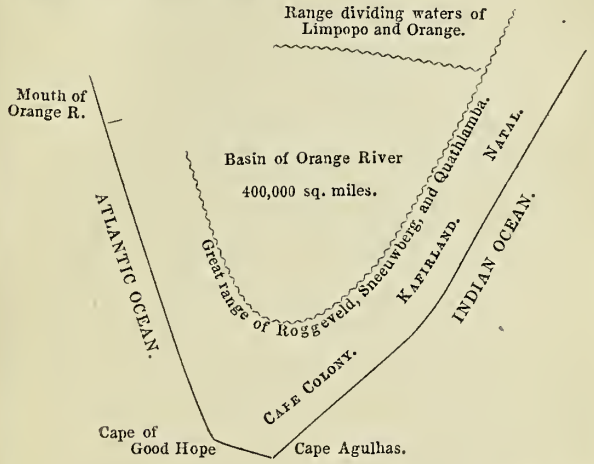
CHAPTER XX.—CONCLUDING REMARKS.

241. A brief and comprehensive description of all that is considered absolutely necessary in order to give young readers a comprehensive view of the southern extremity of the Great African pyramid, and its political and ethnological divisions, has now been given, in as plain and simple a manner as possible. Dr. Livingstone, however, has given in a very few words, in his missionary travels, a very happy general view of the regions. It is here presented, somewhat enlarged upon: "Our route (from Cape Town) to the north lay near the centre of the cone-shaped mass of land which constitutes the promontory of the Cape. (This may be misunderstood, as the Cape promontory is only a secondary feature: it would be better expressed, 'the extremity of the African continent.') If we suppose this

cone to be divided into three zones or longitudinal bands, we find each presenting distinct peculiarities of climate, physical appearance, and population. These are more marked beyond than within the Colony. At some points, one district seems to be continued in and to merge into the other; but the general dissimilarity warrants the divisions, as an aid to memory. The eastern zone is often furnished with mountains, well wooded with evergreen succulent trees, on which neither fire nor droughts can have the smallest effect (*strelitzia, zamia horrida, portucalacea afra, euphorbia*, and *aloe arborescens*), and its sea-board gorges are clad with gigantic timbers. It is also comparatively well watered with streams and flowing rivers. The annual supply of rain is considerable; and the inhabitants, Kafirs and Zulus, are tall, muscular, and well made; they are shrewd, energetic, and brave; altogether, they merit the character given them by military authorities, of being magnificent savages. Their splendid physical development and form of skull show, that, but for the black skin and woolly hair, they would rank beside the foremost Europeans. The next division, that which embraces the centre of the continent, can scarcely be called hilly, for what hills there are are low; it consists, for the most part, of slightly undulating plains. There are no lofty mountains (for the plains they rise from are elevated), and still fewer flowing streams. Rain is far from abundant, and droughts may be expected every few years. Without artificial irrigation, no European grain can be raised; and the inhabitants (Betjouanas), though evidently of the same stock, originally, with those already mentioned, and closely resembling them in being an agricultural as well as a pastoral people, are a comparatively timid race, and inferior to the Kafirs in physical development. The western division is still more level than the middle one, being rugged only near the coast. It includes the great plain called the Kalihari desert, which is remarkable for little water and considerable vegetation."

242. The above is an extract from the fifth chapter of Dr. Livingstone's work, which gives, in a few words, a comprehensive description of the physical geography of South Africa. The vast truncated pyramid, with the high mountain ridges running along its eastern side, and the plains of the Sovereignty and the Kalihari sloping down to the western coast, while the eastern face presents the luxuriant forests and pastures of Kafirland, Natal, and Zululand, are a striking contrast to the bare plains of the Free State, the vast flats of Bushmanland, and the waterless expanse of the Kalihari. On the east is a region

of only a few miles wide, intersected by the streams from the same mountains, whose waters, on the other side, are diffused over a region of thousands of square miles. Here is presented a rough diagram, which will explain the formation better than pages of mere description:



243. In conclusion of this part, it may be observed, that, besides the different divisions of the Cape Colony, there are certain localities in it to which general names are given from certain peculiarities in the soil, climate, or situation, and quite independently of the political divisions. These terms the student should bear in mind, as they will convey a much better idea of the country than the mere names of the divisions can give. Thus, beginning in Namaqualand, the desert region eastward of it, included in the division of Calvinia, is called Bushmanland; and the granitic region, between Kamiesberg and the Olifant's River, is termed Hardeveld, in distinction to the soft Zandveld south of it; part of the Malmesbury division, from its dark and heathy plains, is called Zwartland; and the Twenty-four Rivers give name to a certain well-watered tract east of the Berg River. The Hantam, Onder-, Achter-, and Midden Roggevelds, or Rye Country, describe large mountain ranges lying above the Bokkeveld karroo, to the east of it; while the

Cold Bokkeveld is an Alpine region to the west of it. Warm Bokkeveld is a lower and warmer region. The Goudine and Bosjesveld are the upper parts of the Breede River Valley. In Caledon is found along the coast, the Zandveld and the Ruggens, a low hilly country; in Swellendam, the Grasveld and Kannaland, or the Little Karroo; in George, Outeniqualand, Droogeveld, Kammanassie, Cango, and Langekloof occur; in Albany and Uitenhage is the Zuurveld, along the coast, and Commadagga, north of the Zuurberg, and the Zwarteruggens; in Graaff-Reinet is the Camdebo, at the foot of the mountains, and the Winterveld, Uitvlugt, and Koudeveld on their tops; in Beaufort is the Gouph, in the Karroo, and the Nieuweveld on the other side of the mountains; Colesberg has Wintervelds, and Middenvelds, and Achtervelds; Albert has Hantam and Waschbank; Somerset has Zwagershoek and Bruintjeshoogte. The term "veld" is particularly characteristic of these extents of country; thus, "Trekveld" is generally understood as a country to which the boers migrate with their flocks and herds at certain seasons; "Winterveld," a cold country; "Zuurveld," a sour grass country; "Zoetveld," a sweet grass; "Zandveld" a sandy; "Grasveld," a grassy; and "Hardeveld," a hard or stony country; "Roggeveld" is a country fit for the cultivation of rye; and "Bokkeveld," a country inhabited by springboks—suitable for the rearing of goats. Considerable confusion arises by the constant introduction of these names in the different works which refer to the Cape Colony; and the student should study the map well, to be enabled to distinguish the various Hantams, Roggevelds, &c. (names given by the farmers to particular tracts of country) from the political divisions named by the colonial government, such as George, Swellendam, &c. A similar nomenclature, it may be observed, prevails in other countries peopled by races of Teutonic origin. Thus we have, in Scotland, Badenoch, Lochabar, Gowrie, Annandale, Teviotdale, Bredalbane, Strathmore, Cantire, &c., large tracts of country quite independent of the political divisions known as counties; and in Germany, we have Westphalia, Franconia, the Harz, Zwartewald, &c., the names derived from the primeval circumstances of the regions so named.

244. Young men who would wish to pursue further the study of the physical, natural, and political history of South Africa may consult the following authors, commencing with the earliest Cape Records, collected by Moodie; Kolben's description; Sparrman; Le Vaillant; Thunberg; Paterson; Lichtenstein; Barrow; Latrobe; Burchell; Campbell; Harris; Alexander;

Gardiner; Pringle; Steedman; Backhouse; Arbousset; B. Shaw; Moffat; Kay; Galton; Andersson; Livingstone; and amongst early accounts of voyages and travels there are many relating to these regions. There are also many valuable notices of South Africa scattered through the various missionary records and parliamentary blue-blooks, published from time to time; and in the different local periodicals and newspapers. The principal writers on scientific subjects connected with South Africa are Dr. A. Smith, on its natural history; Lacaille and Maclear, on its geodesy and astronomy; and Messrs. Bain, Atherstone, and Wiley, on the geology. Messrs. Borcherds and Watermeyer have contributed many valuable essays on the early history of the Cape Colony; Messrs. Godlonton and Boyce and Rev. W. Shaw have chronicled the early history of the eastern frontier and its Kafir wars; while Messrs. Robert Moffat, jun., J. C. Chase, C. D. Bell (the present Surveyor-General), A. W. Wiley, Dr. Atherstone, Mr. Bain, and the author of the present little work, have worked in the field of geographical improvement.

Note.—His Excellency Sir G. Grey has made a very complete collection of all works relating to the philology of the South African languages.

PART III.

SKETCH OF THE PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY OF SOUTH AFRICA.

CHAPTER I.—GENERAL OUTLINE OF THE SUBJECT.

245. Having already, in describing the political and ethnological divisions of South Africa, given brief descriptions of the physical features of the country, it is the intention, in this part, to recapitulate these scattered notices, and endeavour to impress on the more advanced students of the subject a correct view of the surface of the southern part of the continent of Africa: (1) As relates to the external crust of the earth's surface in that part of the globe. (2) The atmospheric peculiarities. (3) The form and distribution of animal and vegetable life,—forming a subject, the importance of which is becoming, in modern times, more and more recognized; and which, rudely sketched out in the pages of Buffon, has approached nearly to perfection in the more elaborate works of Humboldt, Berghaus, Johnstone, and Somerville.

246. To give to such a subject, however, any degree of detail or accuracy, data are required; and it must be regretted that, in South Africa, data have not been collected in sufficient quantity to enter very fully on this part of our work. Still many valuable pioneers to science have laboured in the field, and the names of Maclear, Livingstone, Burchill, Barrow, Bain, Atherstone, Rubidge, Andersson, &c., are guarantees for whatever facts exist for the elucidation of its physical geography.

247. Physical geography is the history of the earth in its whole material organization; as a mass of matter, whose external crust exists in various mechanical conditions, acting on and

affecting each other; as the seat of organic life, both vegetable and animal; and as subject to various changes, modifying both conditions of organic existence. It deals not with artificial boundaries of nations, or with the position and relative importance of those localities where men congregate in multitudes. Thus, in giving a sketch of the physical geography of South Africa, where the basin of the Orange River is described, it is without any reference to the Dutch boers living on its southern borders, the miserable Bushmen and Koramas wandering along its banks, or the predatory Namaquas living in the country north of it; the Great Karroo is described without considering the divisions of Beaufort and Worcester, in which it is politically included; the sloping plains of the head waters of the Orange River, and the rocky valleys of the Maluti, are separated from any interest that may be felt in the political affairs of the Free State, or the astute councils of the sage Moshesh.

248. No student can command a perfect and full idea of the geography, or earth-description, as our Teutonic brethren more simply call it, of any country, until he divests his mind in a certain degree of the political divisions, necessary, perhaps, in the present day, for the general study of the subject, and reverts to the earth's features, imprinted on its surface by the hand of the Creator. Looking on the subject with the new light thus afforded, the student of physical geography must, putting historical recollections out of the question for the present, consider Holland as the delta or mud deposit at the mouth of the Rhine; and Switzerland, the group of Alpine valleys round the watershed from which flow the rivers of Germany, France, and Italy. The physical geographer ignores the political boundaries which surround the German kingdoms and principalities of Saxony, Bohemia, Prussia, Bavaria, and Baden, and only regards the basins of the Danube and Elbe, and the watersheds which form the mountain regions of the Tyrol, the Erzegebirge, and the Hartz mountains; Poland, to him, is not remembered as the battle-field of a brave nation fighting for its liberties, but as the vast plain sloping to the north, which forms the surface of Central Europe, from the Carpathian and Bohemian mountains to the Baltic. Physical geography has not the historical charms of political geography. It has, however, its own peculiar attractions; and all students will allow, when they begin to take a large and comprehensive view of the subject, that it expands and strengthens the intellect, and makes clear many doubtful and obscure points in history, which

political geography will not do. Thus, notwithstanding the exclamation of Louis the Fourteenth, when his grandson was appointed heir to the Spanish monarchy—"The Pyrenees exist no longer," a physical geographer will at once recognize, in the existence of a lofty and rugged range of mountains, across a comparatively narrow isthmus or connecting piece of land, a barrier which has hitherto constituted, and probably will for ever constitute, the French and Spanish as totally separate and distinct nations; in the same manner as the Alps form a physical barrier between the phlegmatic Teutonic and excitable Latin races.

249. The influence of mountains in separating races prevails in a much more striking manner in the old world, however, than in the new. In Europe, the Scotch Highlanders, the Welsh, the Basques, the Swiss, and the Tyrolese have, to the present day, preserved a distinct and separate nationality from the lowland populations surrounding them. In the lofty Alpine regions of Asia, the warlike Afghan, the Circassian, and the Koord preserve, in the valleys of the Himalaya, the Caucasus, and the rugged mountains of Armenia, their liberties and national independence. And even in Southern Africa the great coast range of mountains forms the line of demarcation between the Betjouana and Kafir tribes; and it appears as if the final struggle for supremacy between the black and white races would eventually take place in the lofty Alpine valleys of the Maluti and Quathlamba mountains. In the new world, at the present day, the existence of some of the most extensive and lofty mountains on the surface of the globe has not so much modified the relations of the human race. The elevated valleys of the highlands of Mexico are inhabited by degenerate Spaniards and tribes of mongrel Indian races, and the native population of the elevated plateaux of the South American Andes are in no way superior to the dwellers in the plains, either in love of independence, in intelligence, or in activity.

CHAPTER II.—ON THE FORM, DISTRIBUTION, AND NATURAL PHENOMENA OF THE LAND OF SOUTH AFRICA.

250. The physical features of the region forming the southern extremity of the continent of Africa, shaped, as it has been described in Part I, like a vast truncated pyramid or triangle, with its apex towards the south, may be most clearly comprehended by describing the river systems which drain it, and the

mountain ranges forming the ridges or water-shed lines from which those rivers descend. Thus considered, it will be found that South Africa, from its southern extremity, Cape Agulhas, latitude 34° 49′ south, longitude 20° 0′ 40″ east, to the mouths of the Zambezi, is divided into the following natural systems: (1) The coast region, drained, generally, by rivers of short course, and separated from the interior by a mountain range nearly continuous from Ovampoland, round the Cape Colony, to the north of Delagoa Bay, as far as is known; the different river basins, separated by subsidiary ranges of mountains and highlands, which must be considered offshoots of the primary range. (2) The great basin of the Orange or Gariep River, draining the northern and western sides of the coast range of mountains and the immense tract of desert country north, nearly to Lake Ngami, Betjouanaland, and the southern slopes of the Magaliesbergen, an extent of nearly 400,000 square miles. (3) The river system of the Limpopo or Ouri, draining the northern face of the Magaliesbergen, the eastern parts of the Kalihari desert, and the southern slopes of the Malappo mountains, which last separate this basin from that of the Zambezi. The embouchure of this basin on the coast is not accurately known. (4) The great river system of the Zambezi, only the southern slope of which can be included in this description, as the northern portion of its basin extends north as far as 8° of south latitude. (5) The Cuanene basin, which drains the northern edge of Ovampoland and the Kalihari desert. This region is as yet little known, but its exploration has been undertaken, and will probably be soon elucidated, by the traveller C. J. Andersson.

251. *Mountain Ranges.*—It is probable that the mountain ranges of South Africa are connected in some degree, both on the eastern and western coast, with those high lands which fringe the coast of Africa, from Abyssinia to the basin of the Niger. A study of the systems which have been described will much facilitate the acquisition of a correct knowledge of the mountains and water-shed lines.* In Damara and Ovampoland is found, at an average distance of 120 to 150 miles from the coast, and in many places much nearer to it, a broad band of high table land, studded with rugged and apparently unconnected peaks and barren hills, between which and the sea lie extensive barren, sandy plains, and from which issue,

* In all descriptions of mountains and rivers, we generally commence on the west, or left hand, and travel round South Africa to the right.

to the north and east, sluggish periodical streams, which either are wholly evaporated in their course, or eventually find their way into the Cuanene or the dry water-courses of the Kalihari. This barren and rugged belt of mountains loses itself to the north, according to our present knowledge, in the high and fertile plains of Ovampoland; on the east they sink into the elevated plateau of the Kalihari desert; while to the south they continue down to the bed of the Orange River, on each side of the valley of the Onp or Borradaile River, and south of it, formiug the rugged belt of the mountains of Little Namaqualand and the Kamiesbergen, where the high terrace of Bushmanland, seemingly a perfect flat, although upwards of 3,000 feet above the sea, eventually connects these mountains with the Hantam, Roggeveld, Nieuweveld, Sneeuwberg, Zuurberg, Stormberg, &c., of the Cape Colony, and so north-east to the Quathlamba and Drakensberg of Natal, although their geological formation is very different. The Maluti, of Basutoland, and the Magaliesbergen, are offshoots, at nearly right angles to the main range, the latter separating the river system of the Orange from that of the Limpopo River; and it is very probable that the same mountain range, more or less interrupted, eventually joins the Alpine region of Abyssinia, in the same way as the Balkan and Pyrenees can be traced as continuations of the Swiss Alps, and the Rocky Mountains of North America identified with the same mountain system as the volcanic peaks of Tierra del Fuego. The general character of the mountains of Damaraland, south, as far as the Kamiesbergen, is granitic, and from the Hantam to Natal, sandstones of more recent formation.

252. The mountain ranges already mentioned have been sometimes called the back-bone of Africa, and should be always kept in view, as forming the most distinctive physical feature of the country. The average height of their summits varies from 5,000 to 10,000 feet, and two or three culmiuating knots or groups of high lands occur, from which radiate subsidiary ranges, enclosing various upland plateaux and valleys. In the Sneeuwbergen, the lofty peak of the Compassberg forms such a point, sending to the north-east the ranges of the Rhenosterberg, Bamboesberg, Stormberg, aud Quathlamba, and to the south-east the Zwagershoek mountains, Great Winterberg, Amatola, and Matuana mountains. Again, on the north-west angle of the Natal colony, another point of great elevation is found in the Mont aux Sources, from which ramify the Maluti mountains and the Wittebergen; further to the north, again,

near the heads of the Likwa or Vaal River, occurs a large elevated plateau, from which ramify, running nearly east and west, the ranges of the Magaliesberg, Chouanye, and other parallel chains, forming the water-shed between the Orange and Limpopo river systems. Running parallel to the mountain chain already described, and more especially in the Cape Colony and to the north-east of it, are many subsidiary ranges, forming, as it were, retaining walls or buttresses to the elevated terraces or plateaux, which rise in regular steps from the coast to the interior. These secondary chains of mountains, ranging from 4,000 to 6,000 feet in height, may be considered as commencing south of Olifant's River, and run from thence round the coast, terminating between St. Frances' Bay and the mouth of the Great Fish River, where they gradually sink down to the sea level. The distance between the coast and the range nearest to it varies from seven to forty miles; these ranges enclose the elevated plateaux of the Great Karroo, the Cold Bokkeveld, Warm Bokkeveld, Kannaland or Little Karroo, Olifant's River Valleys, west and east, Langekloof, &c., varying in elevation from 1,000 to 3,000 feet above the coast regions. North of the great mountain range first described, immense elevated plains, covered with groups of hills, sometimes isolated and sometimes connected, slope down to the basin of the Orange River, forming the plains of the Free State, the Nieuweveld, Bushmanland, &c.; and in the coast region groups of hills often occur, standing in advance, as it were, of the main range, such as the Piketberg, Riebeek's Kasteel, the Paarl and Cape promontory mountains. The general features of the mountains of South Africa are varied in their outline, and present a scarped and precipitous face to the coast, sloping more gently to the interior; for instance, Table Mountain, the Roggeveld mountains, &c. In many places, such as the Olifant's River mountains, the Quathlamba, the Outeniqua mountains, and where the summits are composed of sandstones, more or less recent, and friable on exposure, the outline is picturesque and varied in the extreme. The tabular form is also very prevalent in many of the sandstone ranges, often capped with igneous rocks; but in the granite region, north of the Olifant's River, west, and extending into Great Namaqualand, the gneiss and granite rocks present bare and rather rounded summits. In the immediate neighbourhood of the Orange River Valley, near the termination of its course, the hills appear of the most fantastic shape, as if subjected to violent igneous action. North

of the Nieuweveld mountains, a secondary range, called the Karreeberg, almost entirely composed of flat-topped-hills, runs from east to west for many miles, until lost in the hills on the southern side of Bushmanland. As a general remark, the coast side of all these ranges is always the best wooded. (For the height of the principal points in the mountain ranges which have been accurately fixed, see Appendix II.) None of the mountains of South Africa, however, reach the limit of perpetual snow, which is one cause of the periodical nature of the rivers rising on their sides.

CHAPTER III.—ELEVATED PLAINS, DESERTS, KARROOS, ETC.

253. The principal deserts and karroos of South Africa have already been briefly noticed in Part I; but it is necessary here again to say a few words on these physical features, which give a distinguishing stamp to this part of the earth's surface. The deserts of South Africa are not—like the Saharas of the northern portion of the continent—sandy wastes, shifting their surface under the breath of every gust of wind, or cold, inhospitable plains, like the Gobi of Central Asia; on the contrary, they are generally composed of shallow beds of the richest soil, which only wants the fertilizing power of water to render them as rich as any other parts of the surface. Lichtenstein and Pringle describe, in elegant terms, the beauty of the Great Karroo after the vivifying effect of a few thunderstorms. The Kalihari, bare of water though it be, is in many places covered with a luxuriant vegetation; and Bushmanland, after the periodical rains, presents the appearance of a vast waving field of hay; but owing to the formation of the surface, the scanty rains that fall soon run off, and the summer sun quickly reduces it to its previous burnt and barren appearance. Dr. Livingstone's theory of the South African deserts is, that they once formed the beds of immense lakes, of which the fast diminishing Lake Ngami now presents the only remains. The whole of these waters, it is supposed, were let off by fissures or cracks made in the subtending slopes by the upheaval of the country. The fissures thus made at the Victoria Falls let out the waters of the great central valley of the Zambezi. The fissure through which the Orange River pours itself, at the falls of Aukrabies, probably drained off the waters of the Kalihari desert and of the table lands of Bushmanland. The Warm Bokkeveld Valley and Kannaland

were probably lakes at one period, the one drained through Michell's Pass, the other by the valley of the Gauritz; and probably the Great Karroo and Olifant's River Valley, also; and, indeed, the rugged and fearful valleys through which the waters of the Orange, the Gauritz, and other rivers reach the sea, show the evident traces of some violent convulsions of nature. The basins of Cradock and Queen's Town appear like the deserted beds of old lakes, now drained by the water-courses of the Great Fish and Kei Rivers. A proof of the elevation of the land, at a comparatively recent geological period, is seen in the beds of shells, many of them of existing species, found along the coast, at heights varying from fifty to five hundred feet, embedded in a muddy tufa.

254. The soil of the Kalihari is generally a light-coloured, soft, and pure saud, resting on a bed of a tufaceous conglomerate, probably on a substratum of granite or gneiss,—in the western part, at least. The many dry river-courses that intersect it contain much alluvial soil, baked hard by the burning sun, and resulting from rain-water standing for months in pools formed in their channels. Towards the east, the sandstone formations, capped with trap rocks, appear; and, to the north, the country seems to be an alluvial deposit, or bed of an ancient lake.

255. The substratum of the Great Karroo is a blue shaly rock, composing part of Mr. Bain's dicynodon strata, covered with thin beds of red argillaceous soil; both rock and clay appear to contain much soluble saline matter, which causes the general brackish nature of both the springs and rivers found in the Karroo.

CHAPTER IV.—EXPLANATION OF WATER-SHED LINE—WATER-SHED LINE OF SOUTH AFRICA.

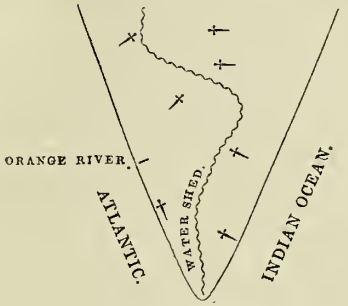
256. Before entering further into any detailed description of the physical geography of South Africa, the student should acquire a correct idea of the line of division which separates the waters running into the Atlantic from those falling into the Indian Ocean, commonly called the water-shed line, of which the ridges of a house will give a popular idea, which are the water-sheds of the roof, while the gutters may be considered as its river channels. A little consideration will show, that to look at the highest mountain ranges alone will give a very incorrect idea of the water-shed, for all sorts of elevations, on each

side of the roof, may be made without changing the tendency of the water from one to the other, as the following rough diagram will show:

Here the fall from A, the line of water-shed, to B and C may be but trifling, and the face A B may be covered by high mountains, D D D, and the face A C may be a perfect plain, yet all the rivers between A and B will drain to B through opens and kloofs in the mountain ranges D D D. Of course, if no such opens existed, lakes would be formed at the foot of the mountains until the waters exceeded the level of A, and so discharge themselves along the slope A C. But this seldom happens in nature; and in the Cape Colony especially are many instances of rivers running a considerable lateral course to find a vent to reach the sea; for example, the Olifant's River, east, the Magalies River, the Zonder Ende River, Touws River, Great Fish River, and many others, the valleys of some of which are considerably higher in the upper part of their course than the summit level or water-shed line of the river system to which they belong. The Great Fish River is also a good example, rising as it does in the high valleys of the Sneeuwberg, and running a considerable distance before it meets a gap in the mountain ranges through which to escape.

257. *Water-shed line of South Africa.*—As South Africa forms a vast triangle, the base of which is too remote to affect the present question, the river system of the country must be considered as discharging itself into the two oceans that bathe its sides, namely, the Indian and Atlantic. The base, of course, is the Mediterranean. But if any large inland sea existed near enough to affect the flow of the rivers to the north, the case might be different, and the water-shed would be thus more complicated; but that does not appear to be the case. The insignificance of Lake Ngami as a receptacle of drainage is now well known, and can no more affect the general tendency of rivers to reach the sea, than a little indentation in a gutter would hinder the water from flowing along it; and the larger Lake Nyassi is many miles north of the northern water-shed of the Zambezi, or perhaps connected with it, the southern water-shed of which river forms the northern one of South-eastern

Africa—at least of the river systems connected with the Cape Colony. In other words, to recur to the homely simile of a roof, South Africa may be supposed a vast triangular one, with one ridge bisecting its acute angle, not very regularly, certainly, but something in the form shown in the diagram; and it will at once be seen that there are only two oceans to receive its waters.



CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

The line thus roughly shown may be more particularly defined by mentioning the principal localities near which it passes. Commencing, then, at the Cape of Good Hope, it bisects the peninsula from north to south until it reaches Wynberg. Thence it crosses the Cape Flats along the high ground dividing the waters of the Eerste and Zout Rivers, along the ridge of Simonsberg at the sources of the Berg River in Franschehoek; then north along the ridge of the Drakenstein mountains to Nieuwekloof, and along the low neck which separates the waters of the Little Berg and Breede Rivers up the north side of Mitchell's Pass to Karroo Poort, crossing the Karroo along the ridges of the Little Roggeveld, which divide the water-courses—for they can hardly be called waters—of the Doorn and Groote Rivers from those running into the Touws and Gamtoos. Thence it passes along the top of the Nieuweveld mountains to Waai Poort, and across the high plateau north of the Camdeboo mountains, rather more than half way between Richmond and Graaff-Reinet, to the Compassberg, which may be termed one culminating point or nucleus, for the waters run from its flanks in all directions, and the Great Fish, Sunday's, Zeekoe, &c., running respectively east, south, and north from it. From thence the water-shed follows the summits of the secondary

ranges of the Rhenosterberg, Zuurberg, and Bamboesberg, until it reaches the Stormbergen, where it is exceedingly well defined. From the Stormberg it runs north-east parallel to the coast, and about 80 or 90 miles distant from it, as far as the Mont aux Sources at the head of the Orange River, which forms another nucleus, as it were, in the mountain range, and from which issue, to all points of the compass, the waters of the Orange, the Caledon, the Vaal, the Tugela, and the Umzimvooboo Rivers. It still follows the mountain line, which here, forming the boundary between Natal and the Orange Free State, trends more away from the coast until it reaches the high central plateau from whence spring the remotest sources of the Vaal River and those of the Limpopo. This plateau, which runs nearly east and west, may have, when it falls abruptly to the coast, a height of between 7,000 and 8,000 feet. Hitherto the general direction of the water-shed from Cape Point has been nearly parallel to the coast, or north-east; but it now, for some hundred miles, runs from east to west, as far nearly as Kolobeng, on the east edge of the Kalihari desert, separating the waters flowing north into the Limpopo basin from those flowing south into that of the Orange River. The mountains now begin to be lost in the sandy plains of the Kalihari desert, across which, in a north-westerly direction, a few miles south of Lake Ngami, the water-shed now runs until it reaches the high table lands of the Ovampo country, whence it runs north about 200 miles from the coast of the Atlantic, but probably soon trends to the north-east, so as to form the basin of the Cuanene. The height of the water-shed crossing the Kalihari is probably nearly 4,000 feet above the sea. A reference to a map will show this water-shed forming a huge horseshoe-shaped basin, discharging into the Atlantic, nearly five sixths of the area of which is drained by the Orange River and its affluents. The largest basins of drainage into the Indian Ocean, excepting the Zambezi, are the Limpopo (the embouchure of which is not exactly known), the Gauritz, Gamtoos, Great Fish, and Tugela Rivers. Cutting off the south-eastern angle of Africa by a parallel in the latitude of the most northern tributary of the Orange River, the area comprised will be about 850,000 square miles, nearly 400,000 of which are drained by that river and its tributaries. Allusion may here be made to the extraordinary phenomenon exhibited in the water-shed of the Zambezi River and its tributaries. Two large branches are shown by Livingstone, anastomosing with each other; and more recently Mr. F. Green, who has ascended the Tonka—a large river running

into the north-western angle of Lake Ngami—has ascertained that there is also a connection between it and the Zambezi; and further, that the Zouga River, in dry seasons, does not run out of the Lake Ngami at all; but, where the Tamanakel joins, the stream divides, part running into the lake, part losing itself in large *vleis* to the eastward. Again, the natives, who are very trustworthy informants, describe the Cuanene heads as running in two directions,—one to the west, forming the Cuanene, and the other to the east, into the Tonka—thus forming a connection between the Zambezi and Cuanene Rivers, a thing almost unprecedented, as they disembogue into two distinct oceans. This can only be explained by supposing the interior of South-eastern Africa to be at nearly a dead level; and yet the description of those grand falls given by Livingstone would lead to a different conclusion. In fact, after heavy rains, the rivers appear to flow in all directions, and some of them to be finally absorbed in the sands of the interior. As to Lake Ngami, it is fast vanishing. Mr. Green found only six feet of water in the centre of it, and could with difficulty push a boat of light draught through its shoals.

258. The minor lines of water-shed existing between the different rivers have not been mentioned here. They are, however, interesting and worth studying, as conveying, the most perfect idea of the surface of a country. On a small scale, the water-shed between the Great Fish, Kowie, Bushman's, and Kareiga Rivers may be studied near Graham's Town; for the sources of tributaries of all these rivers are found adjacent to each other. The high lands about Gaikaskop and the Amatola also very beautifully illustrate the dividing lines between the Great Kei basin and the basins of the Great Fish and Keiskamma Rivers. In the Kalihari desert and the country of waters north of it, however, these water-sheds become very obscure and puzzling, a heavy thunderstorm often changing the direction of a river; so that one traveller may report a river running eastward, and the next may view it running in a contrary direction.

259. *Local Terms descriptive of the Physical Surface.*—In considering the mountains and hills of South Africa, there are certain local terms in general use, and adopted, as it were, into the geographical nomenclature of the country by universal consent. The principal of these will be found collected as an appendix (I); and they have quite, in South African geography at least, superseded the corresponding English expressions.

CHAPTER V.—RIVERS.

260. There are several peculiar features in the rivers of South Africa. Those included in the coast river system, with but few exceptions, as the Berg, Breede, and Olifant's Rivers, east and west, generally run in deep beds, ploughed up by the torrents of water which sometimes come rushing through the narrow gorges of the mountain ranges which run parallel to the coast, the effect of thunderstorms bursting over the Great Karroo desert and the high mountain ranges bordering it, or over the elevated basins of the division of Cradock or Queen's Town. Lichtenstein describes, in elegant terms, the frightful chasm by which the united streams of the Gamka, Dwyka, and other periodical streams pass through the great Zwarteberg mountains, forming, near the sea, the Gauritz River. Along the coast of the George division, where the mountain range approaches very close to the shore, the many streams there, although their course is but a few miles, have formed beds, many of them several hundred feet in depth, running in deep valleys often many miles in width, and rendering travelling along the coast very difficult. Such is the general nature of the rivers of the coast region, nearly as far east as Natal. With the exception of the Breede River, none of the South African rivers are navigable for any useful purpose; even the Orange River, which drains a surface of 400,000 square miles, is hopelessly barred with shifting sand-banks and its course impeded by numerous shallows and rapids; although at Aliwal North, several hundred miles from its mouth, it is a noble and beautiful river. The Zambezi, also, which is almost beyond the river system spoken of in this work, although navigable, appears to have its entrance impeded with many difficulties. Some of the rivers disemboguing into Delagoa Bay have, however, been ascended for many miles, and been favourably described.

261. The impediments at the mouths of the rivers are banks of sand, thrown up by the fierce winds and currents meeting round the southern extremity of the African continent; and, owing to peculiarities of climate, the rivers, although sometimes rapid and impetuous torrents, unfortunately soon diminish in volume, and very often cease for months to flow at all. Under such natural disadvantages, we can hardly hope, even with the assistance of modern science, to see South Africa benefited by the navigation of her rivers, an element which has raised America to such a height among the nations of the world. No

deltas or mud deposits are found at the mouths of any of the rivers west of the Utnkela; bnt that of the Zambezi covers several hundred sqnare miles.

262. Generally speaking, the rivers of the coast regions take the shortest course to the sea. They are, however, often diverted from it by the interposition of monntain ranges. They are seldom available for irrigation, except near the upper part of their courses; for the Great Fish, Gauritz, Gamtoos, Bushman, Great Kei, &c., when approaching the ocean, run in deep beds, sunk many feet below even the narrow valley which extends between the lofty heights bounding their conrse on either side. In many of the npland valleys, however, near the sources of the rivers of the coast region, snch as the Warm Bokkeveld, Twenty-four Rivers, Olifant's River (east and west), Zwagershoek, the valleys of the Sneenwberg and Great Winterberg, the Kat River, and division of Qneen's Town, irrigation is practicable to a great extent; and in many other places, by a scientific system of damming, the available arable land of the Cape Colony could be increased to an almost indefinite extent. The heads of the Gamka and Dwyka Rivers, and their branches, and the sonrces of many other streams, now draining the Great Karroo, could, by properly damming the narrow valleys in the Nieuweveld and Roggeveld mountains, in which they rise, be made to afford a sufficient snpply of water to convert the now sterile Ghonp into what its Hottentot name really denotes, *i.e.*, a fat field. The same observations apply to nearly all the narrow kloofs and valleys of the mountain ranges of South Africa. The water-courses have too great a fall, and the conntry is pretty much in the condition of a slated roof with good draining;—a shower falls, the pipes sometimes, perhaps, overflow, but the water eventually runs off and leaves the roof dry as before.

263. The great majority of the rivers here are periodical, *i.e.*, only flow after heavy rains. A few in the Western districts of the Cape Colony,—the Breede, Berg, and Olifant's, for example,—are permanent. In Great and Little Namaqnaland, the Kalihari desert, and the whole of the region situated on the southern slope of the Nieuweveld and Roggeveld mountains, whole years may elapse withont the phenomenon of a rnnning stream, and yet the magnitude of the dry water-courses of the Buffels, Hartebeest, and Oup or Borradaile River, all tributaries of the Orange, show how immense must be the torrents that sometimes sweep along them. The writer of this has seen the bed of the Great Fish River perfectly dry; and within twenty-four hours a torrent, thirty feet deep and several hundred feet

wide, was roaring through it. In February 1848, the Kat River suddenly rose upwards of fifty feet in the course of a few hours, and swept seventeen feet above the roadway of a stone bridge at Fort Beaufort, which had been supposed to be built high enough to leave a clear water-way to the greatest flood ever before remembered. The Gamtoos, Gauritz, and all the other rivers draining the Karroo are also subject to very sudden rises, although, generally, but dry channels. The periodical rains falling on the mountains near its sources, between September and March, also swell the Orange River to a great extent; and large portions of land along its banks are then inundated.

264. The waters, especially when low, of many South African rivers, are brackish, *i. e.*, contain, in solution, chloride of sodium and magnesium, nitrate of lime, &c., all component parts of the soil and rock through which their beds run; hence the occurrence so often of the names Brak (bitter) and Zout (salt) River, on the map of South Africa. These brackish waters occur in all parts of South Africa, both along the coast and in the interior, and are often a source of bitter disappointment to the thirsty traveller, for they are frequently of a beautifully clear and crystal appearance. Habit, however, reconciles the Cape colonist to these bitter waters, so that often, as in the use of salt, really fresh and sweet water appears insipid to a farmer who has been for years quaffing the saline draught of some Pekel Fontein or Brak River. On some soils, it is believed, brackish water can be usefully employed in irrigation, especially those formed by the decomposition of the old quartzite rocks.

265. The course of nearly all the rivers in the more sterile parts of South Africa can be traced by a belt of vegetation along their banks, consisting principally of mimosa and willow trees, and, on the lower course of the Orange River, of a species of bastard ebony.

CHAPTER VI.—LAKES, SALT-PANS, VLEIS, FOUNTAINS, HOT SPRINGS, ETC.

266. The only collection of water in South Africa to which the denomination of lake can be given is Lake Ngami, in latitude 20° 40′ south and longitude 23° east, first reached by Dr. Livingstone and Mr. Oswell, in 1846, and already mentioned in Part I. This lake, which is about fifty miles long, with an average width of eight or ten, receives, at its north-western

extremity, the waters of the Tonka River, supposed to be an anastomosing branch of the Zambezi, rising in a chain of mountains far to the north-west, in which are said to be situated the heads of the Cuanene River also. Its course is tortuous in the extreme, and it is often very difficult to discover in what direction it is flowing. On the eastern extremity of the lake issues a similar stream, called the Zouga, which, by means of a tributary, called the Tamanakel, is also connected with the Zambezi system. Thus, Lake Ngami forms, as it were, a vast pool of little depth; and according as the rains fall north-east or north-west, so do the streams we have mentioned appear to flow, often in opposite directions, so perfectly flat and level is the surface in this part of South Africa. Its height above the sea is 3,713 feet.

267. *Salt-pans.*—The waters of the river Zouga, as it runs to the west, are generally absorbed in the brackish soil of the desert, and form immense dry beds of shallow lakes covered with an efflorescence of salt. Dr. Livingstone estimates the width of the pan Ntetwe at ten miles, and its probable length at one hundred; and south of it is a still larger pan, discovered by Mr. Chapman, into which several channels of periodical torrents appear to enter from the east, while the waters of the Zouga appear to reach it on the western side. The whole of these large surfaces are generally perfectly dry, and covered with reeds; and beds of salts of lime, soda, and several smaller salt-pans are also found in the locality. The largest salt-pan in the Cape Colony is the Commissioner's Pan, in Bushmanland, first visited by Mr. G. Thompson. It is a shallow basin with a circuit of eighteen or twenty miles, its surface generally dry, and covered with a crust of salt. It is situated in the midst of the Bushman desert, about 100 miles north-east of the village of Calvinia. Pans producing excellent salt are also found near Bethelsdorp and in the Coega, near Uitenhage; also in the Cradock division, the Griqua territory, several places in the Free State, and other localities.

268. *Vleis.*—Vlei is the colonial term generally given to any body of water collected in shallow pools, not fed by periodical springs or rivers, but varying in extent according to the fall of rain or dryness of the season. It is also applied in certain cases to the collections of water which often accumulate near the sand of the coast, caused by small and sluggish rivers, whose waters are unable to force their way to the ocean, as in the case of Verloren Vlei in Piketberg, Zoetendal's Vlei near Bredasdorp, &c. In some cases, after heavy rains, and when the localities

favour their formation, large tracts of country are transformed into what seem to the passing traveller large lakes. Of this kind is De Beer's Vlei, at the junction of the Kareka and Zout Rivers, on the borders of the Graaff-Reinet and Uitenhage divisions, in the Great Karroo; Zout River Vlei, near the Nieuweveld mountains, between Beaufort and Murraysburg; and De Beer Vlei (the Burder's Vlei of Campbell), near the junction of the Brak with the Orange River, in the Hope Town division. But these are very often quite dry, and hardly to be distinguished from the surrounding country, except perhaps, by a greener appearance. Vogel Vlei, near the Berg River, and Verkeerde Vlei, near the Karroo Poort, are pretty permanent sheets of water, and the latter is the head of the Touws River, a branch of the Gauritz.

269. *Fountains and Springs.*—Fountains are found more or less distributed over the face of South Africa, even in the most desert portion of the Kalihari, Namaqualand, and the Karroo; and wherever there is a fountain of fresh water, animal life of some sort may be met with. Unfortunately, in many of the geological formations of South Africa, the saline elements so predominate that the fountains and springs are often brackish; yet fresh water is often found in the close vicinity of the most alkaline soils and rocks. It would seem, however, that there is a process of desiccation going on at present, both in the fountains and rivers. Many of the rivers and fountains in Great Namaqualand, Bushmanland, and the Kalihari country, permanent in the recollection of many now living, have been dry for years. Livingstone tells us that the water supply of the Lake Ngami takes place in channels capacious enough for a far more copious flow. It resembles a deserted eastern garden, where all the embankments and canals for irrigation can be traced; but where the main dam and sluices have been allowed to get out of repair, and only a small portion can be laid under water. When Sebituane, the Makololo chief, passed through the Kalihari desert, some thirty years ago, the Sarotli fountain was a large piece of water; the burnt-up and gaping Makoko, in the remembrance of many living, was a flowing stream; and the fountain at Kuruman gave, when Mr. Moffat first settled there, a much more copious supply than it does at present. Many deep pools formerly existed in the Kuruman and Malapo Rivers, now long dried up; and it would also appear that, in general, the fountains of the Nieuweveld, Winterveld, and Middenveld, or the country forming the northern slope of the great mountain range, have been growing weaker for years,

showing the very great necessity for the construction of artificial dams wherever the locality will permit. In the Hope Town and Colesberg divisions many have been lately made, with good success. This partial drying of fountains may be probably caused by a recurring cycle of dry seasons.

270. Fountains may require to be only cleaned and opened to give an increased supply of water; sometimes, however, they are completely lost by the same process. As a general rule, the waters in the sandstone and granitic formations are less brack, and sweeter, than those found in the clay-slates and argillaceous rocks of the Karroo, and the tufaceous beds of the Kalihari.

271. Sucking places are the small springs found in different parts of the Kalihari, and generally kept secret by the Bushmen, who suck out the water through reeds, and preserve it in ostrich egg-shells.*

272. *Mineral Waters.*—There are many hot and cold mineral springs in South Africa. The principal ones within the colonial boundary are the Olifaut's River hot springs, at the eastern foot of the Kradouw mountains, a chalybeate spring with a temperature of 108°; the Brandt River hot bath, near Breede River, with a temperature of 150°. Hot springs also exist at Malmesbury, Caledou, Warm Winterberg, Montagu, Olifant's River East, Cradock (hepatized water), temperature 88°, Aliwal North, and several other places. North of the Orange River, in Great Namaqualand, is the hot spring called Nisbett Bath. Hot springs are also found near the sources of the Orange River, in the Transvaal country, Damaraland, and many other localities in South Africa.

273. *Artesian Wells, &c.*—It is not probable, from the peculiar geological formation of the country, and the comparative absence of the later tertiary formations, that, except in a very few localities, any attempt at the formation of artesian wells would be attended with success; and although, from the time of Barrow, theorists have attempted to account for the scarcity of water in South Africa, yet the cause seems simple enough. The surface of the country is deficient in beds of gravel, or the softer permeable rocks, which are necessary to allow of the sinking of the rains into subterraneous reservoirs; and the rain consequently either runs quickly off into the sea, or is evaporated by the heat and general dryness of the climate of the interior;

* Even in the driest river-beds, water will generally be found by digging a few feet.

and as a general rule, perhaps, it will be found that the number and strength of springs and fountains will be in an inverse ratio to their distance from the mountain ranges; thus, travelling north from the Nieuweveld and Roggeveld mountains, the springs diminish on approaching the Orange River, and the country is consequently nearly a desert. Livingstone, however, considers that the geological structure of the Kalihari is such, that the formation of artesian wells could be successfully carried out.

CHAPTER VII.—GEOLOGY.

274. Although the labours of Bain, Atherstone, Wiley, Rubidge, and other modern pioneers in geological science have done much in clearing away the obscurity which hung over the rock formation of this part of the globe, yet it would hardly be possible to give an extended and complete view of its structure; and, therefore, only such an outline of the subject as the data at hand will supply can be given.

275. The geology of Great Namaqualand and the western coast region, as far south as the Olifant's River, may be considered as belonging to one formation—gneiss and schist—capped and overlaid in many places by newer rocks. The general mass of granite, which appears to underlie the gneiss, is very bare and exposed on the southern part of this region; but south of the Olifant's River it is covered by newer rocks, and only reappears at some points, as at Riebeek's Kasteel, Paarl Mountain, Joostenberg, and the base of Table Mountain, and along the shores of the peninsula as far as Cape Point. The Kamiesbergen and the hills skirting Bushmanland are nearly all composed of granite and gneiss.

276. The gneiss rocks of Namaqualand are frequently penetrated by crystalline felspar rocks, many of them presenting indications of copper and other metalliferous deposits, which have of late attracted attention to that part of South Africa.

277. Many of the mountains, both in Great and Little Namaqualand, show horizontal beds of sandstone or quartzite, identical, seemingly, with that which overlies the clay-slate and granite of Table Mountain; and it is probable that the extensive plateau of Bushmanland is partially composed of beds of the same rock, covered with deposits of tufaceous limestone.

278. The rocks in the immediate vicinity of the Orange River assume the most fantastic shapes: everywhere may be

seen veins of the whitest quartz traversing nearly black or ferruginous-looking masses of hornblendic schist or greenstone. No animal remains are found in any of the rocks of these regions. It is very difficult to distinguish between the granite and gneiss rocks, for they appear almost insensibly to pass into each other.

279. South of the Olifant's River is an apparently new geological region. The mountain ranges, which there appear with a greater degree of regularity to run parallel to the coast, form a series of steps, rising into the interior, which would appear in a geological map somewhat as the boundary lines between the different strata. In attempting to describe these, use will be made of the valuable geological notes on the subject scattered through the pages of the *Eastern Province Magazine*.

280. *Primary or Metamorphic Strata.*—The bases of Table Mountain and Lion's Head, and the substratum of the whole country as far as the Olifant's River, is composed of highly-inclined clay-slates and schists, resting on granites which are often protruded. These slates and schists extend eastward as far as Gamtoos River.

281. *Devonian.*—On the outskirts of the rocks just described, and (if we may judge by Mr. Bain's sections) apparently with the same slope and strike, lie the devonian fossiliferous beds of Ceres and the Bokkeveld; and on the same authority a mass of claystone porphyry is described, lying between conformable beds of the devonian rocks and others which differ little from the last in lithological character, but which have hitherto afforded only vegetable fossils. These porphyritic bands extend from the Hantam in the west to the mouth of the Gulana in the east; but the igneous character of these rocks has been warmly contested by other geologists, such as Wiley, Rubidge, &c. These rocks may be well observed, close to Graham's Town, and crossing the road near the Ecca Valley.

282. *Table Mountain Sandstone or Quartzite.*—Surmounting, in patches of various size, all the rocks already described, and often assuming their dip and strike, are certain hard, quartzose masses, with a generally horizontal position (as in Table Mountain) in their upper portion, while the lower assumes the dip and strike of the rocks on which they rest—(Mitchell's Pass). In the Eastern Province, the horizontal rocks, if they ever existed, are no longer recognizable. These quartz beds have few or no fossil remains, and are principally composed of silica, often stained with oxide of iron.

283. *Dicynodon Strata.*—Lying unconformably on the beds of the devonian rocks are the dicynodon strata, the most interesting, in a scientific point of view, of the South African formations. They are generally little disturbed, and locally assume the horizontal position, and are intersected in all directions by dykes of igneous rocks, which, when large, form the central axes of mountain chains. They abound in fossil remains, such as bones, shells, and vegetables. There seems, according to Professor Owen, to be good reason for referring them nearly to the age of the new red sandstone. They also abound in lime and salt, and are probably of lacustrine origin. Mr. Bain considers these beds as the bottom of an ancient lake or sea, which extended north, as far at least as the Zambezi, which was probably one of the outlets by which its waters escaped. The Nieuweveld, Roggeveld, Sneeuwbergen, Winterbergen, Stormbergen, and Quathlamba mountains are all composed of these rocks, more or less capped with greenstones.

284. *Oolitic Formation.*—In detached patches along the eastern coast, between the Gamtoos and Great Fish Rivers, are beds of rocks, nearly horizontal, and abounding in fossils, as ammonites, gryphæ, ferns, and fossil woods, which enable geologists to assign to them an epoch coeval with that of the oolitic strata of Europe. These beds have been deposited in ancient bays, the boundaries of which are easily made out. They are strongly impregnated with salt, and contain lime in abundance.

285. *Cænozoic.*—Beds of hard limestone and calcareous sandstone cap the lower hills of oolite along the coast. These contain shells, such as exist in the adjoining ocean at the present day. Besides the above lithological divisions are found various alluvial beds of clays, indurated by the iron oxides of the sandstone rocks in the neighbourhood. A considerable bed of this underlies the sands of the Cape peninsula, and is of such hardness that the walls of buildings can be constructed of it. Immense tracts are covered with beds of tufaceous limestone, such as the Kalihari and parts of Bushmanland.

286. *Geology of Table Mountain.*—The geological appearances on the flanks of Table Mountain afford a very good study. The clay-slate rocks, which once, probably, lay horizontally, will there be found violently upheaved, and standing as it were on edge against the mass of granite which appears to have been protruded in a state of fusion through the same, as will be seen on examining the line of junction on the beach, near Sea Point, and above the Gardens, on the Kloof road,—the clay-slate,

intersected by veins of the granite, in every direction, and a band of rock alternately changing from clay-slate and granite into gneiss. Over the upheaved clay-slate and protruded granite will next be observed the nearly horizontal beds of quartzite, forming the crest of the Lion's Head and the steep escarpment of Table Mountain. All round the flanks of the mountain, near the shore, the rocks are covered with those beds of indurated clay called iron-stone gravel, the debris, probably, of the sandstone cliffs and schistose beds of the clay-slate. The sandstone of the Devil's Hill, it should be observed, rests directly on the beds of clay-slate; and the granite appears to penetrate the mountain, reappearing again on the Wynberg side, and continuing to show itself along the beach, on both sides of the peninsula, to Cape Point, capped with sandstone.

287. In the Natal Colony, sandstones, probably similar to those found in the eastern districts of the Cape and in Kaffraria, are found along the coast. Farther inland are formations of sandstone, without animal remains, probably similar to the quartzite already described, and often assuming the tabular form. A large vein of granite is said to traverse the mountain range running from north-east to south-west, and causing much local disturbance. In the north-western part of the Quathlamba are beds of shale and soft sandstone, traversed by veins of basalt. The rugged summits of the Quathlamba appear to be an easily decomposed sandstone.

288. *Minerals.*—The only metallic deposits of any value found in South Africa are those of copper, in Namaqualand, which, although known for many years, were first turned to any practical account in the year 1852-3, by the enterprising firm of Phillips and King, of Cape Town, and have been more recently worked by the Cape Copper Mining Company of London. These copper deposits are probably continuations of those worked by the Portuguese in Loando; and extend as far south, nearly, as the Kamiesbergen. On the eastern termination of the Magaliesbergen or Cuanene mountains are also large deposits of copper ore, which is smelted by the natives. In the Cape Colony, indications of lead are found at the Maitland mines, near Port Elizabeth, and native iron and iron ore is found in many localities. Small traces of gold have been found in many of the copper ores of Namaqualand. Asbestos and soap-stone is found in Griqualand, and north of the Vaal River.

289. *Coal.*—Although several beds of carbonaceous matter, more or less combustible, have been found in many places,

near Burghersdorp, in the Stormberg, at Kneehalter Nek, near the Kowie Mouth, &c., none of them have proved of any practical utility.

290. *Brack Soil.*—The greater proportion of the surface of the Cape Colony and adjacent regions is composed of brack soil, fitted only for the growth of particular plants; and the springs that issue from these formations are invariably brack.

291. Brackishness in a soil is not derived from the plants growing on it; on the contrary, the plants do not give,—they only receive. There is no saline matter in the air or rain water, so that the only source from which the plants derive their saline character is the soil itself.

292. Mr. Wiley considers that the salt deposits and salt impregnations of the surface soil, so common, not only in Namaqualand, but all over the Colony, can only be accounted for by the fact that the sea was once present where they now occur; and this more particularly explains the preponderance of brackish ground in Namaqualand, Bushmanland, and the Kalihari. As the fall of rain is there, annually, so small, and the drought so protracted, the soil never can be thoroughly washed and cleansed from saline particles, as it has been in more favoured localities.

293. The plains of Bushmanland, in the higher parts at least, being covered with a deep bed of fine sand, and subject to heavy summer rains, are getting, probably, purged of brack to a certain degree; and the salt is being washed into the large salt-pans on the eastern side, and into the plains of Namaqualand on the western; and these plains are covered with sweet grass; while the adjoining flats in Namaqualand, where less rain falls, are brack, bushy karroos, and the fountains become more brackish on descending towards the coast or river.

294. It is probable, also, that the blue slates of the dicynodon system hold in their component parts salts of lime, easy of solution; and decomposed felspar, one of the component parts of granites and gneiss rocks, contains potash and soda, which are easily washed out, and when not absorbed by growing crops, may, in a country subject to droughts, accumulate in the soil. The fountains in the blue slate districts are generally brackish. The other great rainless regions, such as Northern Africa, Central Asia, and Australia, and the country west of the Rocky Mountains, all resemble portions of South Africa in this respect. This defect cannot be cured except by a total change of climate.

295. *Volcanoes and Earthquakes.*—There are no active volcanoes in South Africa, though the traces of volcanic

action in the immense igneous dykes and croppings of many of the hills in the dicynodon strata show how powerfully the internal forces must have acted at one period. Shocks of earthquakes—the last on the 14th August 1857—have been occasionally experienced, but without inflicting much damage. Hot springs are of frequent occurrence.

296. *Caves.*—Very extensive caves with magnificent limestone stalactites exist at Cango, in the Great Zwarteberg range, near the village of Oudtshoorn. Nearly all the other caves are merely recesses formed by the overhanging masses of horizontal sandstone, and once formed the residence of the aboriginal Bushmen.

CHAPTER VIII.—HYDROLOGY.

297. *Oceans.*—The western coast of South Africa is bathed by the Southern Atlantic Ocean; the southern and eastern, by the Indian Ocean. A great bank, called Agulhas, runs from near the mouth of the Great Fish River, round the coast nearly to St. Helena Bay, at a distance varying from forty to one hundred and fifty miles from it, and probably at one time formed part of the continent. Between the southern edge of the bank and the coast, soundings can always be got, in from sixty to ninety fathoms; but the depth of the ocean suddenly increases beyond this limit.

298. *Currents.*—Round the edge of this bank, in a south-westerly direction, flows the current known by the name of the Cape current, which is formed by the junction of the current running between the main land and island of Madagascar, called the Mozambique current, and the current from the seas south of Madagascar. A part of the Cape current is deflected by the Agulhas bank, and flows round by the Cape of Good Hope into the South Atlantic current; but the main portion turns southwards, in latitude 21° to 24°, and then passing eastwards forms an important counter-current, mixing with the South Atlantic counter-current.

299. The Cape current is from ninety to one hundred miles wide, and at different parts of its course flows at the rate of from sixty to one hundred miles a day. This rate is, however, often impeded or accelerated by the prevalence respectively of north-west or south-east winds. Outside the Agulhas bank the temperature has been observed 8° above that of the ocean. Many counter-currents, running near the coast from west to east, are observable; and some dangerous ones near the coast

of Uitenhage, east of Plettenberg's Bay, appear to set right on the shore.

300. *Bays.*—The coast line of South Africa is little indented by deep bays; and those that occur, with the exception of Saldanha Bay, are generally very open and exposed. Almost the only islands found are a few inconsiderable rocks. Along the southern coast the shore is, for the most part, bound with very dangerous rocks. Along the western coast it is generally sandy, and in some parts is lined with low granite rocks.—(*Vide* Part I, Chap. III.)

301. The oceans in the vicinity of South Africa are often agitated by violent tempests; and it is supposed the waves are the highest known; hence the old name of the Cape of Storms, given to it by early navigators. The sublimity of the scene, united to the threatened danger, no doubt exaggerate, to a spectator, the magnitude of these waves. The average rise of tides along the coast of South Africa does not exceed four feet nine inches; and this cause, combined with the tendency of the oceans, waves, and currents to sand up the river mouths on the coast, renders nearly all the streams unnavigable.

CHAPTER IX.—CLIMATE AND OTHER METEOROLOGICAL PHENOMENA.

302. It is not intended here to enter into any scientific discussion as to the component parts of the atmosphere, the causes of rain, dew, twilight, mirage, &c.; but merely to present a few facts as to the meteorological phenomena of South Africa, and a simple description of the principal natural appearance which the winds, rains, and climate in general assume, from the valley of the Zambezi, southwards, to Cape Agulhas.

303. Considering the description of the climate of South Africa to apply to those regions south of 20°, it will be found, on inspecting Berghaus's rain chart, that that portion of it bounded by the parallel of 20°, and on the coast side by the mountain ranges which fringe the south-western and eastern coasts, is situated, if not in a rainless region, yet in one in which the rains are periodical and partial; and, it may be doubted whether rain ever falls in many parts of Great Namaqualand, the Kalihari, and Bushmanland (at least, in the portion east of the Hartebeest River). South Africa is, indeed, except in its eastern portions, unfortunately circumstanced, as regards the first great necessity of animal and vegetable life. Situated

at the extreme southern angle of a large continent, the prevailing winds must of necessity blow towards the great heated surface of the interior, exposed to the influence of a tropical sun. Hence the prevalence of southerly winds, which, blowing over a cold sea, and in early summer over fields of ice, can bring little rain. If they came from the north-west they would come loaded with the moisture of the tropical seas, which would then be deposited on the northern slopes of the coast ranges, and fertilize the karroos and deserts; but the north-westerly winds do not seem to extend far to the northward, and their influence is hardly felt one hundred miles in the interior.

304. In the Cape Colony itself, the prevailing winds are tolerably well marked by the trade-winds, namely, the south-east, blowing from about October until March, and the north-west, from April until September. During the south-east season, dry weather prevails in the portion of the Colony west of the Gauritz River, and the Eastern Province enjoys fertilizing rains; and *vice versâ*, the northerly winds, which bring rain along the coast regions of the west, prevail in the form of hot, dry winds in the Eastern Province.

305. It may be easily imagined that such an extensive region as South Africa presents many very different belts or zones of climate; yet, until the unhealthy regions of the eastern coast, north of Natal, and the swampy levels of the great central valley of the Zambezi or Leambye are reached, the whole may be considered as exceedingly favourable to European constitutions. They may be conveniently classified as follows:—*First*, the coast region, from latitude 20° south to the Olifant's River, and extending as far inland as the foot of the mountain ranges, the character of which may be broadly stated as subject to severe droughts; temperature characterized by intense heat in the day time; and nights, even in the hottest season, cold; and it is not uncommon, in Little Namaqualand, to have the thermometer at sunrise as low as 40° or 50°, even in the middle of summer; while from 11 a.m. to 4 p.m. it will stand in the shade at 100°, or more.

306. In this region the rains, which are periodical, and very partial, appear to diminish towards the south, being, in fact, situated between the limits of the tropical rains and the regular rains of the southern parts of the Cape Colony; and there is, probably, a zone of rainless region similar to those existing in North Africa, Australia, and South America, extending from the coast along the Kalihari desert, whose limits are, however, not strictly defined.

307. Mr. Wiley describes the climate of that portionof Namaqualand south of the Orange River as one which, in a tropical country, would, when the air is overcharged with moisture, be depressing and unendurable; but in Namaqualand, it need not prevent any one from riding, or even walking, so long as the dress is suited to the temperature, and the head protected from the force of the sun's heat. It is not, however, favourable to longevity, since the extreme tension of the nervous system speedily gives way when one who has remained a few years in a dry climate changes to a moister one.

308. On the immediate coast it seldom rains; but dense fogs arise about dawn, and continue till 10 or 11 a.m. Low fevers are prevalent, and the general absence of fresh water forbids us to consider the western coast of Africa, south of 20°, although free from marshes, as favourable to European constitutions for more than a few months' residence. This description will apply to Walvisch Bay, as well as to the coast south of the Orange River. The prevailing winds in the neighbourhood of the Orange River and Little Namaqualand are south-west, setting in from the sea to the heated plains of the interior. In the winter, these high lands are colder than the western ocean, and we have very cold east-north-east and south-east winds. No series of correct meteorological data have been kept in these regions for a sufficient length of time to afford any scientific results.

309. The northern parts of Namaqualand receive, partially, the benefit of the subtropical rains, which, sweeping along the mountains which bound the valley of the Oup River, eventually reach the table land of the Bushman country. In the southern portion of Namaqualand the rains fall in winter; sometimes a heavy thunderstorm and rain-fall occurs in summer. Mr. Wiley estimates the average annual quantity of rain falling on the coast regions in Little Namaqualand at not more than four inches, and in some places not more than a quarter of that depth. The deep sand of the valleys and river beds, however, preserves this small quantity for use, and water may be generally got by digging in the dry water-courses.

310. The *second* climatic division to be described is the belt of coast country extending from the Olifant's River West to the Gauritz River, and reaching inland to the mountains forming the western and southern edges of the Great Karroo. The characteristics of the climate of this division, although it varies in a few places whose elevation is considerable (as the Cold Bokkeveld, for instance), may be described as within the

influence of the south-eastern trade-wind; and for eight months in the year, at least, during the prevalence of westerly winds, receives a bountiful supply of rains from the ocean. In summer, the south-east winds blow with great violence, and are remarkable for the local phenomenon they exhibit in the neighbourhood of the Cape peninsula and Table Mountain, called the Tablecloth. Thunderstorms are not so frequent as they are further inland, and more to the eastward, even along the coast,—the annual mean of observations of lightning at the Royal Observatory, Cape Town, for 23 years ending 31st December 1864 being between twelve and thirteen. For the same period the mean temperature was 61·88 F., maximum 99·5 on 18th March 1864, minimum 34·3 on 18th June 1860;* the average fall of rain, 24·473 inches; the mean height of barometer, 30·034. The barometer rises before south-east winds, and falls (*vide* Meteorological Table in Appendix) before north-west.

311. The *third* climate, that of Table Valley and its immediate vicinity, has certain local peculiarities which will be briefly described. The difference of temperature between the summit and base of Table Mountain is about 13°. The mean humidity, of the air during the summer months, December, January, and February, is 66·4 per cent, and the mean temperature, is 68·7 F. the corresponding temperature of the dew point is 57·5 F., or 11° 2′ below the temperature of the air.

312. If we assume the humidity and atmospheric pressure to remain unaltered, the temperature of the air must descend about 12° before precipitation, in the form of cloud, fog, or rain, can take place. This circumstance is intimately connected with the phenomenon already alluded to—the Tablecloth. If, therefore, the stratum of air were suddenly lifted 3,600 feet, which is nearly the height of Table Mountain, its temperature would be lowered 12°, and a portion of humidity would be condensed in the form of cloud or fog, irrespective of each cubic foot becoming lighter by sixty-one grains.

313. The strong and violent southerly winds which prevail during these months effect the displacement. Table Mountain, like a huge wall, receives some four miles in breadth of the current which bounds up with diminishing temperature, and deposits the celebrated tablecloth or cap on the top. The upper surface of this majestic white cap is smoothed off like a well-dressed peruke—its northern border hangs over the precipice,

* On the grass the thermometer indicated 28·3 F., and was of course encrusted with ice.

drapery fashion; but during very strong winds it pours down like a cataract to about 1,000 feet from the top, where, entering a warmer temperature, it dissolves and disappears. Before a south-easterly gale, the barometer rises, and white fleecy clouds begin to gather on the summits of the Hottentot's Holland mountains. The same phenomenon is repeated on the Wynberg side of the mountain, in the summer season, when a north-westerly wind prevails.

314. The mean temperature of the cooler months, June, July, and August, is 55·1 F., the humidity, 80·6 per cent, and temperature of the dew point 49°, namely, 6° below the meau temperature of the air. The prevailing winds are north, north-west, west, and occasionally south-west. Hailstorm squalls are usually from the south-west, and lightning in that quarter is generally a sign of hard weather. The first indication of north-west winds is a fall in the barometer, and the appearance of a mass of condensed vapour rolling over the Lion's Hill; the air feels damp, and a swell sets into Table Bay. The violence of the north-west winds is generally in proportion to the fall of the barometer. During north-west and westerly gales the quantity of rain falling at Wynberg, on the south-eastern side of Table Mountain, is much more considerable than in the valley. The respective falls of rain at Cape Town, the Observatory, and Wynberg, for 1858, up to the 26th August, were twenty-four, nineteen, and thirty-six inches.

315. *Fourth.*—The climate of the eastern division, from the Gamtoos River to Kafirland, is, on the whole, more agreeable than the western. Heavy rains and thunderstorms occur during the summer months, moderating the intense heat and keeping the surface of the country fresh and green. The winters are often very cold, but the air is generally clear and agreeable; the maximum thermometer in the shade, at Graham's Town, 1,728 feet above the sea, in 1857-8, stood at 106° with a hot wind, the minimum 35°; the annual fall of rain was 32·18 inches. But very hot days there are generally terminated by a thunderstorm and violent rain, which makes the average temperature less than that of the western divisions. In the year ending 31st May 1858, twenty thunderstorms were observed in Graham's Town.—(See Table in Appendix.)

316. The climate of the Great Karroo, the *fifth*, extending from the Hantam between the two great ranges as far eastward as Graaff-Reinet, at an average level of 3,000 feet above the sea, is characterized by severe droughts, rain seldom falling, except near the mountains; an intensely hot temperature in

summer, with cold nights; and in winter exceedingly sharp nights and mornings, with three or four hours high temperature between 11 a.m. and 3 p.m. Barrow thinks the extreme cold of the Karroo plains is caused by the alkaline nature of the soil. No meteorological observations of any extent exist for this part of the Colony.

317. The climate *(sixth)* of the country north of the Sneeuwberg and Winterberg mountains and the plains of the Free State, forming high plains from 3,000 to 5,000 feet above the sea, although subject to long droughts, is, on the whole, both salubrious and agreeable. In the summer months, the thunderstorms constantly occurring on the summits of the high mountains, render the air cool and agreeable; and the winters, though sharp, are always clear, bracing, and agreeable; indeed, for pulmonary complaints, medical men agree that there is no finer climate in the world than the plateau of Cradock and Queen's Town and the plains of the Free State.

318. In the immediate vicinity of the high ranges of the Maluti, Sneeuwbergen, and Stormbergen, snow lies on the ground for three or four months in the year, and of course the upper valleys present climates more or less temperate; but it is undoubted that this portion of South Africa is one of the healthiest in the world.

319. The *seventh* climate, is that of Natal, resembling that of the eastern coast region. In summer, rain falls daily, and thunderstorms are of constant occurrence. The thermometer on the coast ranges in summer from 77° to 85°, in winter from 58° to 70°; on the first inland plateau, where the capital, Pietermaritzburg, is situated, in summer from 64° to 75°, in winter from 48° to 60°. Near the Quathlamba mountains, which are covered with snow three or four months in the year, the winters are very cold.

320. Although some of the peculiarities of the climate *(eighth)* of Betjouanaland and the Kalihari have already been described in paragraphs 215 and 233, Part II, it will be necessary, in order to preserve the unity of the subject, here to recapitulate them. The climate of Betjouanaland and the Kalihari is marked by a general deficiency of rain, which, indeed characterizes all the regions north of the coast mountain range, forming the basin of the Orange River. Livingstone thus accounts for it: "The reason, probably, why so little rain falls in this extensive plain is that the prevailing winds of most of the interior country are east, with a little southing. The moisture taken up by the atmosphere from the Indian Ocean is deposited on the eastern

slope of the mountain ranges, and when the moving mass of air reaches its greatest elevation it is then on the verge of the great valley, or, as in the case of the Kalihari, the great heated inland plains; there meeting with the rarefied air of that hot, dry surface, the ascending heat gives it greater capacity for retaining its remaining humidity; and few showers can be given to the middle and western lands in consequence of the increased hygrometric power. This is the same phenomenon, on a gigantic scale, as that which takes place on Table Mountain, in what is called the spreading of the Tablecloth.

321. "Now, if, instead of a hollow on the lee side of Table Mountain, we had an elevated heated plain, the clouds which curl over on that side, and disappear as they do at present when a south-easter is blowing, might deposit some moisture on the windward ascent and top, as the south-easterly winds do now on the hill valleys of Kafirland, the Kat River, and Winterberg; but the heat would then impart the increased capacity the air now receives at a lower level in its descent to leeward; and instead of an extended country with a flora of the disa grandiflora, gladiolus, rushes, and lichens, which now appear on Table Mountain, we should only have the hardy vegetation of the Kalihari."

322. *Hot Winds.*—Livingstone thus describes one of the hot winds from the north-west, blowing across the desert: "It feels somewhat as if it came from an oven, and seldom blows longer at a time than three days. It resembles, in its effects, the harmattan of the north of Africa; and at the time the missionaries first settled in the country, thirty-five years ago, it came loaded with fine red sand. It is so devoid of moisture, as to cause the wood of the best-seasoned English boxes and furniture to shrink, so that every wooden article not made in the country is warped. This wind is in such an electric state, that a bunch of ostrich feathers held a few seconds against it becomes as strongly charged as if attached to a powerful electric machine; and clasps the advancing hand with a sharp, crackling sound."

323. Dr. Livingstone considers the borders of the Kalihari desert as admirably suited for all patients having pulmonary complaints. "It is the complete antipodes to our cold, damp English winter. The winter is perfectly dry, and as not a drop of rain ever falls, from the end of May to the beginning of August, damp and cold are never combined. However hot the day may have been at Kolobeng (and the thermometer, previous to rains, sometimes rose to 96° in the shade), yet the atmosphere never had that steamy and debilitating effect so well

known in India and in parts of the coast region of South Africa itself. You may sleep out of doors at night with the most perfect impunity, as for many months not a drop of dew falls."

324. Between the northern edge of the Kalihari and the Leambye or Zambezi valley, there is a *ninth* zone of climate, which forms a middle term between the dry region of the south and the more damp one of the "Country of Waters" to the north. In spring, the country suffers much from drought. The rainy season extends from September till April, but its approach is not so regular as further to the north. At Linyanti, the first rains fall about the end of September; and at Matlokako, the rainy season begins, according to Moffat, in October. In the same latitude, in Ovampo and Damaraland, although heavy rains occasionally fall between November and January, the regular rainy season is from the first of January to the latter end of April.

325. The climate *(tenth)* of the Transvaal, on both the northern and southern slopes of the Magaliesbergen and great central plateau, is dry and healthy, resembling that of the northern parts of the Free State; but, farther to the north, the increased temperature and abundance of water engenders fever, and it assumes a tropical character. The same may be said of the Ngami regions, on the northern border of the Kalihari. The proximity to the great central valley of the Leambye or Zambezi, called by the natives the "Country of Waters," and the numerous anastomosing rivers which annually overflow, render it, in the summer season, very unhealthy; and fever and ague are there very prevalent. On reaching the Leambye we enter into the zone of the tropical rains, which appear to follow the course of the sun.

326. *General Observations.*—Throughout the regions now described are localities whose altitude or particular local circumstances give a distinguishing stamp to their climates; for instance, the deep and narrow valleys of the Olifant's River West are, in summer, intensely hot. Kannaland, between the Langeberg and Zwarteberg mountains, has a climate resembling the Great Karroo. The belt of coast between the Outeniqua and Zitzikama mountains and the sea, being well wooded and favoured with abundant rains, may, perhaps, be more damp and tropical in its climate than other localities near the sea. The hot and deep valleys of the Great Fish and Great Kei Rivers present striking contrasts to the cooler high lands bordering on them; and dwellers who have broiled in the Great Fish Valley will remember the delight they felt, in the summer

season, when they could ascend for a day or two to the plateau of Fort Peddie or Graham's Town. Fort Beaufort may probably, in the summer season, be hotter than Calcutta or Rangoon; yet within twenty-five miles of it are the deliciously cool valleys of Post Retief and the Great Winterberg; and the difference in climate between Cape Town and Wynberg, although only eight miles distant, need hardly be alluded to. In Table Valley, grapes come to great perfection; the Alpine farms of the Cold Bokkeveld barely suffice to ripen the cherry. In Graaff-Reinet, the honest burghers groan and swelter through the summer months, while the villagers of Murraysburg enjoy cool summers, and, scant of fuel as they are, can hardly bear the cold of the Alpine winters of the Koudeveld. But hot as the climate generally is in the summer months, the prevailing dryness of the atmosphere renders it, except in a very few localities, one of the healthiest in the world; and with the exception of Australia, the Cape climate stands highest for salubrity in the statistics of the army medical department, deficient as is the accommodation and sanitary condition of many of our barrack buildings.

327. *Mirage.*—The phenomenon called mirage is very common, both in the interior heated plains and on the coast of South Africa, as it also is in the opposite latitude in North Africa. The illusions differ according to circumstances. Riding across the heated plains of Cradock or Colesberg, the spectator will suddenly see the whole features of the landscape change around him; sugar-loaf hills will be transformed into table mountains, and *vice versâ*, and a distant secretary bird will appear as tall as an ostrich; sometimes imaginary lakes will be formed. The same phenomenon is often observed, both in Table and False Bays, causing the apparent altitude of the surrounding hills to alter in a surprising manner. It results from the refraction of rays of light passing through strata of air of different density or moisture. Mr. Maclear made a scientific use of the apparent displacement thus effected of the plains of Bushmanland, by observing, at certain times of the day, the position of the peak of Kabiskouw, about seventy miles distant from his station, which by extraordinary refraction was seen above the horizon, when under ordinary circumstances it should be invisible.

328. *Thunder and Hailstorms, Snow, &c.*—In the summer season, more especially in the northern and eastern parts of the Cape Colony and the adjacent regions, thunderstorms are very frequent and violent, and are generally accompanied by the

following phenomena: After three or four days of very hot weather, small clouds begin to form on the horizon, generally in a northerly or north-westerly direction, early in the day; a hot scorching wind from the north-west sets in, often accompanied by clouds of dust; and the atmosphere assumes a dull yellow tinge. The clouds begin to accumulate and roll over each other in dark, smoky-looking masses, until at length the whole sky becomes overcast. Soon distant rumblings are heard, gradually becoming louder, until at last the whole heavens seem in convulsions; bright and vivid flashes of lightning quickly follow in all directions, succeeded by rattling and pealing volleys of thunder, until the storm, gradually passing overhead, terminates in torrents of rain; and in a few hours all is calm and beautiful, and the air cool; while, on the horizon, in a direction opposite to that whence the storm proceeded, are seen during the night the soft reflections of the distant lightning as it passes away to the southward. Every three or four days, during the summer, in seasonable weather, such storms occur; and, although sometimes fatal to life and property, do immense service by revivifying the scorched vegetation, and filling the dams and vleis with an abundant supply of excellent water. It is a grand sight, from a lofty mountain, to see a thunder-cloud discharging itself beneath you; the almost instantaneous electric discharge arising from the earth, at one extremity of the cloud, which transfers its electricity to the earth at the other, gives one, indeed, the actual sight of an immense electric telegraph in full operation.

329. Hail, although not common, yet sometimes falls heavily, especially after long droughts. In February 1849, after a drought of many months' duration, and in the midst of a very hot and almost cloudless day, a strange rattling noise was heard in the neighbourhood of Fort England, near Graham's Town; and it was found that within a circle of not more than half a mile in diameter a hailstorm had burst; the stones of which, some of them like irregular jagged pieces of ice, were not less than an inch and a half in diameter, and lay in some places, on the ground, nearly three feet in thickness, while all around was heat and sunshine. Large numbers of sheep are often lost by similar hailstorms in the frontier divisions.

330. In the coast regions, very little snow ever falls; but on the high plains north of the Nieuweveld and Sneeuwberg mountains, in the Cold Bokkeveld, and other high localities, the coast rains are generally precipitated in the shape of snow.

331. The stations in South Africa where regular meteorological observations are recorded are the Royal Observatory

near Cape Town, Simon's Town, Somerset West, Worcester, Mossel Bay, Port Elizabeth, Graham's Town (formerly at the Royal Engineer Department, now at the Public Library), Graaff-Reinet, and Queen's Town. Partial observations are, however, kept by the Cape Town Municipality, by Mr. Blore at Wynberg, at Green Point, at Swellendam, at Recif Light-house, and by the Rev. Mr. Frédoux,* at Moteto, in the Barolong country. The work of observation has been begun at Colesberg, and is likely (under the auspices of the Meteorological Committee) to extend to other places. It is to be regretted that proper observations are not carried on at many more points; for instance Clanwilliam, Springbok Fontein, Hondeklip Bay, Calvinia, Beaufort, George or Knysna, Oudtshoorn, Cradock, Graaff-Reinet, Richmond, Aliwal North, and Bloemfontein. The cost of providing a few trustworthy instruments for each of these localities would be but trifling; and, if the initiative step were once taken, volunteers in the cause of science would be found at once to take charge of them, and keep a daily record of their observations, which would be a most agreeable change in the usual dull monotony of a country village in South Africa. The determination of the mean fall of rain in different parts of the Colony is, in particular, a point of the highest practical importance with reference to our agriculture, &c.

CHAPTER X.—FORM AND DISTRIBUTION OF ANIMAL AND VEGETABLE LIFE.

332. The distribution of animal life in this quarter of the globe is a subject of considerable interest. In no part of the world is found a greater variety of the larger mammalia than in Africa; and, comparatively speaking, but a very few years ago, nowhere did they once abound so numerously as in its southern extremity.

333. In the beginning of the eighteenth century, the elephant and the rhinoceros browsed on the proteas and heaths which clothed the skirts of Table Mountain; the lion crouched in the reeds of the Liesbeek; and the hippopotamus gambolled in the waters of the Salt River. The hyena, within the memory of many living, served as a nightly scavenger to our streets, and a resurrectionist to our churchyards; while troops of baboons

* Details of this gentleman's tragical end, on 27th March 1866, appeared in the newspapers while this sheet was going through the press.

levied black mail on the vineyards and tables of Table Valley. The splendid blaauwbok or roan antelope was found on the hill sides of Swellendam; the blesbok and quagga grazed on the downs of Caledon; whilst the rude pictures in the Bushman caves of Graaff-Reinet, Albany, and Queen's Town show that the giraffe, at no very distant period, was well known to the then savage inhabitants of the Sneeuwberg, the Winterberg, and the Stormberg. All these animals have long since retreated far, far away; and, with the exception of the hyena tribe, the smaller antelopes, and a few ostriches, are rarely to be found within the colonial boundary. All the larger mammalia are fast receding before the march of civilization,—the hyena, jackal, and wild dog alone keeping their ground, and prowling as actively as ever, in the character of ovicides, on our thinly inhabited sheep-farms, or making the night re-echo with their howls, while growling over the garbage cast on the dung-hills of a frontier outpost. It will therefore be partly the object of this chapter to fix, as accurately as possible, the habitat of the larger animals of South Africa in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and sixty-six.

334. To prove the importance of this subject, we need here only remind our readers of the disappearance or extinction of the dodo from Mauritius, the dinormis from New Zealand, the elk from Ireland, the wolf and bear from Great Britain, and the almost extinction of the aurochs, lynx, and many other wild animals from the forests of Central Europe. We shall proceed, therefore, to notice the localities in which a few of the principal animals, once so common among us, are yet found, commencing, as in duty bound, with his majesty Leo, the king of the beasts.

335. *The Lion (Felis leo).*—With the exception of part of Bushmanland, lying north of the Beaufort division, and the most eastern portions of the divisions of Queen's Town and Albert, and perhaps in the newly-annexed British Kaffraria, we do not believe that at the present day a lion is to be found within the limits of the Cape Colony. In the Free State, however, they are still numerous; also in the thinly-scttled parts of Natal, the Transvaal Republic, Great Namaqualand, and Betjouanaland. In Kaffraria Proper, except in the rugged country, they have not appeared for some years. The last lion killed on the eastern frontier was an old male, which was dispatched near Cometjes Post, in 1842, by the assegais of Eno's Kafirs. But stray ones, no doubt, have been heard of in the thinly inhabited parts of the Uitenhage or Colesberg divisions since that period. Some few years ago, the Bontebok flats, north of the

Amatola mountains, now forming part of the Queen's Town division, was a famous hunting-ground for lions; and many a grizzly male has fallen there a victim to the rifles of the frontier Nimrods. A reference to Pringle will show how numerous lions were in the now comparatively thickly-inhabited divisions of Somerset, Bedford, and Fort Beaufort. In 1822, Lower Albany (Bathurst) was also much infested by them.

336. The nearest accessible locality, at the present day, for sportsmen in search of the lion is the country east of the Kraai River and the heads of the Tsomo, about four or five days' journey from Queen's Town, unless the famous Bowker rifles of the farmers of that division have disturbed them. It is probable, however, that although the lion has almost ceased to make his permanent residence near the settled parts of the Cape Colony, Natal, or the Free State, yet, as long as the migratory herds of springboks visit us, a few lions will be found hanging on their rear.

337. *The Elephant (Elephas Africanus).*—The African elephant, strange to say, was never seen in Europe from the time of the Roman empire until A.D. 1856, but in that year a young one was received into the Jardin des Plantes, in Paris, from Central Africa. When the Dutch first formed this settlement, on the shores of Table Bay, the elephant abounded in the immediate neighbourhood; and the numerous hills, rivers, and fountains bearing its name throughout the Colony, show how universally it was distributed. Now, however, they are almost extinct in the Cape Colony; and only a few exist in the dense forests lying east of the Knysna and Plettenberg's Bay, and also in the rugged jungles of the K'adouw bush, between the Zuurburg mountains and the Sunday's River. These are, we believe, the only two colonial localities in which they are still found. The Fish River bush was formerly one of their most favourite haunts; but, after the war of 1836, being much disturbed, they appear to have migrated in a body, through the Buffalo forests, and across the Great Kei, into the almost inaccessible thickets east of the Umzimvobo, near the Natal frontier, where they are still numerous. Traces of their old paths and heaps of their gigantic bones are still commonly found in the thickets of the Great Fish River bush. Before we again meet the elephant we have to travel a long way north into the country north-east and north-west of Lake Ngami, whence, after heavy rains, they migrate into the wooded plains of the Kalihari; and they are often met with by hunters from the west coast. The little-known regions on the eastern

coast, called Sofala, likewise abound with very large elephants. None are met with in the Free State; and in the Transvaal Republic they have nearly all been extirpated.

338. *The Rhinoceros (Rhenoster* of Dutch colonists).—There are at least four distinct species of the rhinoceros found in South Africa, namely:—(1) the *Rhinoceros Africanus*, or bicornis (the Boreli of the Betjouanas), the common black rhinoceros, with two horns of unequal length, once roaming in the immediate vicinity of Cape Town; (2) the *Rhinoceros keitloa*, or black rhinoceros, with two horns of nearly equal length; (3) *Rhinoceros simus*, or common white rhinoceros, called Mohoohoo by the natives; and (4) the Kabaaba *(Rhinoceros Oswellii)*, or long-horned, white rhinoceros, the most rare of all. The last rhinoceros killed in Cape Colony was an old male shot in 1853 on the Coega or Grassridge, near Port Elizabeth; another was killed, in 1842, near the Ecca Valley, in Lower Albany; and these, we believe, were the last survivors of the once numerous Chikooroo. There are still a great many in the north-eastern parts of Great Namaqualand, the northern parts of the Kalihari and Betjouanaland, and the country along the Limpopo; but they are no longer to be found in the Free State, Kafirland Proper, or Natal, west of the Utugela River. Messrs. Oswell and Varden, in one year, killed no less than eighty-nine of these animals, north of the Vaal River; and C. J. Andersson, in his journey from the west coast to Lake Ngami, dispatched between fifty and sixty. The rhinoceros must once have been very numerous in the Colony, judging from the number of hills, rivers, fountains, &c., designated after it. Its favourite food is the spekboom and euphorbium. The last rhinoceros killed in the Free State was in 1842.

339. *The Hippopotamus (Zeekoe* of colonists).—The hippopotamus is still numerous in all the rivers which intersect the sea-coast of Kaffraria, from the Keiskamma to the Zambezi; although, probably, the march of civilization in British Kaffraria has disturbed them in the waters of that region. The last, in the western part of the Cape Colony, was killed in the Berg River, nine years ago, and its remains now form one of the most striking specimens in the Cape Museum. An immense old male was killed, in 1850, by Lieutenant McPherson and Dr. Barclay, of the ninety-first regiment, near the mouth of the Keiskamma, and its head now graces the Medical Museum at Chatham. They were, up to 1848, numerous in the Great Fish River; and a few may still be found in the unfrequented "gats" and reaches of that stream, between Trumpeter's and

Kafir Drifts. In the lower parts of Orange River they are yet numerous, and they abound in vast numbers in the Leambye, Chobe, Tonka, and other rivers of the Ngami region.

340. *The Buffalo (Bos Kafir—Buffel* of colonists).—Except in the great forests of the Knysna, the K'adouw bush, and the Fish River thickets, the buffalo is no longer to be found within the colonial boundary, and will probably not be seen south of the Vaal or west of the Umzimvobo River. In 1842-3-4, we have often met a small herd that frequented the country between the Koomes and Fort Brown, in Albany; and we once saw a shaggy old bull grazing quietly with a span of bullocks, only a few hundred yards from the military post at Frazer's camp. The favourite habitat of the buffalo, at present, appears to be the thorny thickets of Damaraland and the woody hills of the Limpopo and its tributaries. They are seldom seen on the naked plains of the Free State; they prefer a wooded and bushy country.

341. *The Giraffe (Camelopardus—Kameel* of colonists).—That this animal was found south of the Orange River within the last century we have abundant proof in the pages of La Vaillant, Paterson, and others; although it could not have been very common, for few colonial localities are named after it. Its form, however, may be seen depicted in many of the Bushman caves on the eastern frontier; and a tradition exists amongst the Hottentots that it was once very numerous in the Amaebi, or thorn country, now part of the division of Queen's Town. But it has long since retired before the tide of colonial emigration, and is not met with south of Kolobeng. Beyond that point it is found, more or less numerous, across the continent, from the Atlantic to the Indian Ocean, and as far north as the Nubian desert. Mr. Andersson found giraffes very numerous in that dense belt of thorny country which intervenes between Damara and Ovampoland, and in the acacia thickets along the skirts of the Kalihari. The giraffes brought to Europe come generally from Nubia and Sennaar. They were common even in the time of the Romans; the third Gordian exhibited no less than ten at once in the amphitheatre.

342. An undulating country covered with high acacias or kameeldoorn, as the Kalihari, Limpopo mountains, Dongola, &c., is the natural habitation of the giraffe, whose long neck and elastic tongue seem formed by nature for browsing on the tender shoots of trees.

343. *The Cape Leopard (Felis leopardus—Tyger* of colonists).—The Cape leopard, of which there are two distinct

species, is found throughout the whole length and breadth of Africa, from the Atlas to Cape Agulhas. We often hear of it, even in the immediate neighbourhood of Cape Town. We need hardly remind our readers that the Cape leopard, although popularly called tiger, is a very different animal from his majesty of Bengal. Leopards generally haunt deep-wooded ravines and thickets, and climb trees with great facility. They are, therefore, not often seen on the naked flats and karroos of the interior. Young baboons are stated to be a favourite repast of theirs. When wounded, they are very dangerous to approach. Many other of the smaller species of the genus "felis" are also common.

344. *Hyæna (Wolve* of colonists).—There are several species of the hyæna found in South Africa. One species, the proteles or aarde wolve, is, we believe, peculiar to the Cape; although not strictly speaking a hyæna, according to some naturalists, but rather a connecting link between the hyæna and the jackal and dog. The other hyænas found in south Africa are the *Hyæna crocuta*, the tiger-wolf of the colonists; the *Hyæna striata*, or striped hyæna, a large species, often confounded with the former; and the *Hyæna villosa*, strand wolf or maned jackal, the smallest of the three species. The latter is chiefly found along the coast. These animals do not recede much at the advance of civilization, but continue to hang on the outskirts of our cattle-kraals and sheep-farms. In wet and cold weather, the wolf, or *Hyæna crocuta*, grows very ferocious, and in Betjouanaland even ventures into the native huts at night, and carries off young children. At night, travellers on horseback or in bullock wagons sometimes become aware of these animals quietly following them, to avail themselves of any accident for a meal.

345. *Jackals.*—Of jackals there are two varieties in South Africa; the *Canis aureus*, or common jackal, and the *wilde honde*, or wild dog, which hunt in packs. These animals are found universally dispersed over the whole of the continent of Africa, acting as tribes of useful scavengers; and near Cape Town, at least, affording excellent sport to the Nimrods of the community. The caama, from the skin of which the karosses called silver jackal are made, is a true fox *(Vulpes caama)*, and is seldom found within the limits of the Colony, but abounds in the Kalihari desert and Betjouanaland.

346. *Quaggas, Zebras, &c.*—The quagga and zebra (*wilde paard* of the colonists) belong to the genus *equus*, and are found in immense herds on the plains of the Vaal River, and as far south, sometimes, as the divisions of Cradock and Graaff-Reinet,

These animals were formerly numerous on the eastern frontier, on the Quagga Flats near Bushman River, and in the neighbourhood of Bathurst in Lower Albany.

347. *Antelopes (Bokke* of colonists).—In no other part of the world are so many varieties of the antelope family found as in South Africa, from the stately blackbok down to the diminutive blaauwbok or pigmy antelope. Not less than twenty-seven species, many of which, however, are found in other parts of the continent, are reckoned south of 20° of south latitude. Of these the largest are the eland *(Caama* or *Antelope oreas)*, not now found within the limits of the Cape Colony, but still met with in the western parts of Natal, and more plentifully in the Zulu country, the Transvaal territory, the Kalihari, Betjouanaland, and the Ngami regions. It was once very common in every part of the Cape Colony, as the numerous localities called by its name testify. The eland, together with the koodoo, gemsbok, and springbok, are antelopes which can exist almost without water, as long as there is any sap in the herbage. The koodoo *(Antelope strepsiceros)* is a noble antelope, with magnificent spiral horns. It was found in small numbers, as late as 1848, in the thickets of the Fish River bush, but, we believe, has been since quite extirpated in the Cape Colony, except a few, perhaps, in the Zitzikamma forest. They are found, generally, more or less numerous, in all the wooded or bushy regions north of the Orange River, and in the difficult country between the Umzimvobo and Natal. The sable antelope *(A. niger)*, first described by Captain Harris, is a very beautiful and rare variety, not met with until we reach the banks of the Limpopo, 200 miles north of Kolobeng, and forms one of the greatest prizes a sportsman can secure, even in that region so prolific of game. The roan antelope *(A. leucophea)* is also becoming very scarce: a few are still found in Moshesh's country, among the rocks of the Maluti, and from thence along the mountains to the Limpopo regions; it is also called the bastard gemsbok. The pallah *(A. melampus)* is found in Betjouanaland, and on the eastern edge of the Kalihari, but seldom south of the Vaal River; it extends, however, west as far as Damaraland; it is also called the roodebok. The steinbok *(A. tragulus)*, grysbok *(A. melanotis)*, ourebi *(A. scoparia—bleekbok* of colonists), duyker *(A. grimmia)*, blaauwbok *(A. pygmea)*, rhebok *(A. capreolus)*, rietbok *(A. eleotragus)*, roode rietbok *(A. fulvorufula)*, boschbok *(A. sylvatica)* of two or three species, are found, generally, along the coast regions of South Africa. The graceful klipspringer *(A. oreotragus)* inhabits the tops of the

most inaccessible kloofs and mountains; the blesbok *(A. albifrons)*, the bontebok *(A. pygarga)*, the gnu *(A. gnu)*, the sassaby *(A. lunata)*, the hartebeest *(A. caama)*, and the brindled gnu *(A. catoblepas)*, are all found in immense troops on the widespreading plains which reach from the northern slopes of the Magaliesbergen, and south, to the Vaal, and thence across the Orange River to the divisions of Graaff-Reinet, Colesberg, and Cradock. Immense migratory troops of the graceful springbok *(A. euchora)* also cover these plains as well as the northern slopes of the Nieuweveld and Bushmanland, at certain seasons of the year, when pasture is scarce in the Kalihari regions. In November 1858 countless troops invaded even the sterile pastures of Little Namaqualand. The curious gemsbok *(A. oryx)*, supposed to be the fabulous unicorn, is found within the Colony in the northern part of the Hope Town division and along the Orange River, even to the shores of the Atlantic; it is common in Great Namaqualand. A few bonteboks, we should state, are still preserved in the Bredasdorp and Swellendam divisions, on private farms. The waterbok *(A. ellipsiprymna)* and the lechee *(A. lechee)* are found only in the northern parts of Betjouanaland, and in the marshy country near Lake Ngami. A female specimen of the latter was, in 1859, to be seen in the Governor's garden, in Cape Town, with many others of the antelope tribe.

We have now briefly indicated the habitat of the principal large mammalia of South Africa, and proceed to notice one or two of the more remarkable birds, reptiles, and insects.

348. *The Ostrich (Struthia—Struysvogel* of colonists).—In the time of Kolben, ostriches were so numerous in the neighbourhood of Cape Town, that a man could hardly walk a quarter of an hour without seeing one or more of these birds. It is found, in the present day, thinly scattered over many parts of the Cape Colony, in the Piketberg, Malmesbury, and Caledon divisions, in Namaqualand and Clanwilliam, the northern parts of Uitenhage, Beaufort, Colesberg, and Graaff-Reinet; and a few in the dams in the vicinity of Port Elizabeth. In October 1858, a flock of twenty or thirty were seen in the Koeberg, a few miles from Cape Town. But the regions from which we receive our principal supply of feathers are the dry deserts north of the Orange River. Many farmers in the western divisions preserve these birds on their farms; and probably their domestication and annual plucking might prove profitable, since the best feathers range from six to ten guineas a pound in the European market.

349. *Reptiles.*—Many venomous snakes, the pofadder, cobra da capello, ringal, boomslang, &c., are found all over South Africa. A species of python or boa is common in Natal and the Transvaal regions.

350. The crocodile or alligator is not met with in any of the South African rivers west of the Umzimculu, or south of the Mariqua, Ngotuane, Oori, and other streams which form the Limpopo; but they are exceedingly common in all the rivers of the Transvaal region and the Zulu country. They appear to be of the same species as those found in other African rivers, or are perhaps a smaller variety.

351. *The Tsetse (Glossina morsitans—Poison Fly* of traders).—The entomology of South Africa is too extensive a subject to enter on; and we will confine ourselves to a few observations on an insect which, although insignificant in size and appearance, plays a more considerable part in the economy of nature in these regions than even the elephant or lion. We allude to the poisonous fly, tsetse, whose bite, proving fatal to horses and cattle, almost prevents explorations being carried on, except on foot, in those parts of the country where it is found. In a physical sketch of the distribntions of animal life in South Africa by Dr. Peterman, the limits of the tsetse are thus marked: to the north it is found on both sides of the Leambye valley, from latitude 13° south, and more or less on the banks of the streams which enter Lake Ngami or join with the Zambezi river system; it is again met with on the banks of nearly all the rivers of the northern portion of the Limpopo and in the Transvaal region, and on those of the rivers which run south to Delagoa Bay. It is not found in any part of the coast region south of Delagoa, in the Free State, Natal, Cape Colony, Great Namaqualand, or Ovampoland. It is not much larger than the common house-fly, and nearly, of the same colour as the common honey-bee; and the bite of this poisonous insect is certain death to ox, horse, or dog, although perfectly harmless to man and wild animals, and even to calves, as long as they continue to suck the cow; also to the mule, ass, and goat. Immense tracts of country are thus made almost uninhabitable to man by this insignificant little insect. Of other insects, the locust is very destructive; and the common house-fly swarms in immense numbers in the farm-houses in the summer months, and gives, perhaps, more real annoyance to humanity than any other insect, except the equally numerous and dreaded "cimex lectularius."

CHAPTER XI.—DISTRIBUTION OF PLANTS—PHYTOGEOGRAPHY.

352. The botany of South Africa is a subject too extensive and little known to be treated in an elementary work; and we will here make only a few observations on the distribution of the more valuable cultivated plants, and the natural productions which are of use either for domestic or commercial purposes.

353. *Cereals.*—Rye and barley are confined to the temperate zone. It is only in the high lands of Damaraland that their growth extends into the tropic. Rye is the grain principally grown on the lower hills of Little and Great Namaqualand and the Roggevelds, where, in favourable seasons, it produces abundantly. Wheat is produced throughout the Colony, Kafirland Proper, Natal, and parts of the Free State, the Basutu country, and even as far north, in elevated localities, as Angola and the valley of the Zambezi, where Livingstone found it of excellent quality at Zumbo and Tete. The principal colonial wheat-producing districts are Malmesbury, Piketberg, part of Cape division, Cold Bokkeveld, Swellendam, Langekloof, Sneeuwberg and Winterberg valleys, Olifant's Hoek, and the division of Queen's Town. Indian corn or maize requires considerable moisture for its cultivation; and is found growing in all damp situations in Betjouanaland, Kafirland, Natal, Zululand, the Free State, and the Transvaal country, as well as in all the tropical regions to the north. The Kafir corn, or "holcus sorghum," has nearly the same distribution. Oats and oat-hay are grown abundantly in all the regions near the coast. Rice is seldom cultivated, except in the more distant coast regions of Angola or Sofala; but some of a very superior quality is grown in the Colony, on the banks of the Olifant's River, west, where annual inundations take place. Many other kinds of grain, such as millet, sesamum, &c., are found cultivated in the tropical country north of Delagoa Bay and the Zambezi.

354. *Roots, Vegetables, &c.*—The potato, under certain circumstances, succeeds in every well-watered part of South Africa, south of 25° latitude, and has been much extended of late, in the Cape Colony; and Livingstone found it growing even as far north as Cassange, where it was, doubtless, introduced by the Portuguese. Batatas and yams are found in every part of the great central valley of the Zambezi, the Transvaal country, and on the eastern coast, as far as Natal. Ground nuts are produced plentifully in Zululand and Natal, where they

promise soon to become a valuable article of commerce. Arrowroot is also grown there in large quantities, and has been exported to a considerable extent. Melons, cucumbers, peas, beans, &c., &c., are grown universally where there is water, from Betjouanaland to the coast.

355. *Fruits.*—Of all fruits, the vine has the most extensive distribution in South Africa; its juice forms a principal article of export from the Cape Colony, and it flourishes well in Little Namaqualand, Natal, and the Transvaal Republic. It produces eatable grapes in the Zambezi valley; but further north it ceases to bring any fruit to perfection. The distribution of the orange tribe is also very extensive, reaching from the Cape of Good Hope to Angola. In the climate of Natal, the banana, pine-apple, guava, and other tropical fruits come to great perfection. Of the more European fruits, the apple, pear, walnut, chesnut, almond, fig, peach, apricot, &c., all flourish vigorously in the Cape Colony, wherever a garden can be planted; but the more northern kinds, such as the cherry, currant, gooseberry, and raspberry, only come to perfection in the high, cold valleys of the Bokkeveld and Sneeuwberg.

356. *Sugar, Cotton, Indigo, Coffee, &c.*—Although the sugar-cane and its varieties appear indigenous in nearly all the tropical parts of South Africa, yet it is only in the colony of Natal that the manufacture of sugar is conducted on a large scale, and with every prospect of success. The production has now become sufficient not only for home consumption, but to allow of a considerable exportation. Cotton grows wild, most luxuriantly, in the country of the Makololo, in the northern parts of Ovampoland, and on the eastern coast north of Delagoa Bay; and its cultivation has been lately introduced into the Natal Colony. Indigo grows wild in nearly every part of the tropical regions, and in Natal, from which colony some very excellent samples of the manufactured article have been brought. The cultivation of tobacco is spread all through South Africa; and the Makololo and Betjouanas use and prize it not less than the boers and English settlers. The best colonial tobacco is grown in the valley of the Olifant's River East, and other parts of the division of George. The coffee plant has been lately introduced into Natal, and has produced some excellent samples of the berry. Although hemp and flax are rarely grown, yet several wild species of these plants are found in many places, and one, the dacha (*Cannabis sativa*), is extensively used for smoking purposes by nearly all the natives of the interior—Betjouanas, Kafirs, and Hottentots.

357. *Medical Productions, &c.*—The aloe, castor oil, buchu, stramonium, euphorbiums, gum mimosa, wax berry, and many other plants useful for medical and domestic purposes, are found indigenous in great abundance in many parts of the Cape Colony and surrounding regions. Many native plants of great value in medicine were described by the late Dr. Pappe in his useful publication on the properties of South African indigenous plants (Cape Town, 1850).

358. *Forests, and useful Timber Trees.*—Except on the coast side of the mountain ranges of South Africa, there are few forests of any extent, until we reach the basin of the Limpopo, the northern parts of the Kalihari, and the Ngami regions, where, even although water is scarce, vegetation is most prolific. Little Namaqualand, save a few kakerbooms, is almost without timber, or large bush of any sort, except along the Orange River; and, until we reach the Cederbergen, near the town of Clanwilliam, few trees occur, except along the margins of the dry river courses. Large forests occur on the eastern or inland slopes of these mountains, principally composed of cederboom (*Widdringtonia juniperoides*). No considerable forests of indigenous timber occur further east, except a few wooded kloofs in the Zonder Ende and Langebergen, until we reach the extensive Outeniqua and Zitzikamma forests, in the division of George and the Knysna, which reach from the first range of mountains nearly down to the water's edge, and cover an area of not less than 2,000 square miles. Proceeding still more towards the east, we find many well-timbered kloofs, on the coast side of the Kouga and Winterhoek mountains; and, crossing the Sunday River, we come to the extensive K'adouw bush, which reaches from the western part of the Zuurberg to the sea, an extent of about eighty miles, with an average width of twelve miles. Olifant's Hoek, along the coast, is also well wooded, as are also the kloofs of Lower Albany, as we approach the Great Fish River bush. The latter partakes more of the nature of a thicket than a forest; for few of the trees (which are principally mimosa, wild olive, &c.) attain a height of more than ten or fifteen feet. Along the Boschberg, Kromme, Chumie, Katberg, Amatola, and Buffalo mountains, are dense forests of timber of considerable size, consisting of yellowwood, sneezewood, ironwood, melkhout, and other colonial timbers. In Kafirland Proper are many large forests of magnificent timber, chiefly along the coast, and some along the foot of the Matuana mountains. The coast region of Natal, the Transvaal territory, the northern parts of

the Kalihari, and the Ngami regions, are all densely wooded. In the tropical regions to the north of Betjouanaland and the Transvaal country, as we approach Lake Ngami, we find the hills covered with a dense vegetation of the softer evergreen trees, as strelitzias, zamias, spekbooms, different kinds of wild fig; and at the fountains of Lotlokane, latitude 21° 27′, the first palms are seen, similar to the Indian palmyra; and the salt pans of Ntohokatsa are surrounded on the south-eastern side by a thick belt of the Mopane tree. In Ovampoland Galton and Andersson found the first palms in latitude 20°, and the latter found the fan and date palm in the neighbourhood of Lake Ngami. On the eastern coast, however, the palm is found as far south as 31° or 32°. The gigantic baobab or wild cotton tree *(Adansonia digitata)* is first observed on the banks of the Zouga; and, with the mopane or iron-wood tree, is found thinly scattered over the salt plains which stretch between Maila and Mababe. The different acacias, such as the camel-thorn, acacia horrida, &c., form dense forests in a zone extending between Ovampo and Damaraland. The woodless tracts are Little Namaqualand, Bushmanland, the Great Karroo, the northern slopes of the Roggeveld, Nieuweveld, Sneeuwberg, Winterberg, Stormberg, and Quathlamba mountains, down to the Orange River, and far on the other side of it. Along the Orange River, and indeed generally along the banks of its tributaries, are broad belts of timber, chiefly of willow and acacias, and hardly fit for building purposes. But timber, even for firewood, is generally scarce in these regions; and the houses of Colesberg, Burghersdorp, and Bloemfontein can be constructed cheaper with timber cut on the shores of the Baltic or St. Lawrence, than with that growing in the forests of the Amatola mountains, on the Kat River; so difficult of access is the timber, and so bad are the roads leading to it. Dr. Pappe published a useful compendium of the timber trees of South Africa.

359. In concluding this division on the physical geography of South Africa, we would finally beg to impress on the minds of our readers the vital importance of two operations that almost any farmer may have it in his power at any time to perform, namely, the construction of dams, and the planting of trees. The neighbourhood of Cape Town, green and umbrageous as it is, owes its shade to the pine trees, blue gums, and European oaks, there introduced. Planting is gradually converting the once barren sands of the peninsula of the Cape into an incipient forest. In Graham's Town a few pine seeds

sown a few years ago by an engineer officer, Colonel Hope, have grown into stately trees. The orange groves of Mr. Robt. Hart, at Glen Avon, in the division of Somerset, show with what profit the cultivation of that fruit, on a large scale, is attended. The plantations of firs, belonging to Mr. van Breda, on the skirts of Table Mountain, not many years old, even at one shilling each, are probably worth from £40,000 to £50,000 sterling; and yet a great many localities in the Colony, which are equally favourable to their growth, and only require the sowing of a few muids of acorns and fir seed, are left so destitute of timber, that the farmers of the Roggeveld and Nieuweveld have often been known, in severe winters, to be obliged to burn their wagon-bottoms, yoke-skeys, and other wooden implements, to keep soul and body together; and it is well known that, in all the country north of Graaff-Reinet, Richmond, and Cradock, the only available fuel in winter is the dung of the cattle and sheep kraals. Let the Cape farmers follow the example of T. B. Bayley of Caledon, R. Hart of Somerset, and other practical men, and annually plant on every damp and sandy spot on their farms, a certain number of forest trees of quick growth; and in a few years timber enough, not only for fuel, but for all other domestic purposes, will be in abundance. Surely, the fir that braves the frost and snow of Norway and Canada will hardly perish in the winters of the Sneeuwberg; and the oak, which flourishes in the valleys of Drakenstein and Warm Bokkeveld, will do so equally in the now bare kloofs of the Rhenoster and Stormbergen. The more recent introduction of the blue gum shows how easily useful foreign trees can be naturalized in this climate.

360. A deficiency of water is acknowledged to be one of the chief evils of South Africa, but it is one that can be much mitigated by industry and art. We must not forget that our average fall of rain, in a great part of the Cape Colony, Kafirland, and Natal, is more than in England; and, as an instance of how springs and fountains may be economised, we will here mention that Graham's Town, containing 6,417 inhabitants, is situated on the site of an old farm, the proprietors of which were accustomed, it is said, to migrate during certain months of the year to the banks of the Great Fish River from the want of sufficient water for their family and stock. It would be presumptuous to say that hydraulic engineering has exhausted its resources in the Graham's Town water-works; yet, imperfect as they are, they afford a constant and generally a plentiful supply to the inhabitants. In like manner, many parts of the

divisions of Hope Town and Colesberg, which were formerly considered as uninhabitable from want of water, are now covered with valuable farms, and afford some of the best sheep-walks in the Colony, in consequence of the formation of dams.

361. In compiling the present work, we have freely used the valuable materials, accessible to us, of Livingstone, Moffat, Andersson, Wiley, C. D. Bell, the different contributions to Cape geography, geology, and statistics in the Eastern Province and Cape Magazines and the Cape Almanac; but the nature of the work is perfectly elementary; and we have been obliged to give but a meagre outline of a subject which would require a much larger volume for its completion.

362. We now conclude our labours, imperfect as they are, on the political and physical geography of South Africa. In the Appendix will be found many useful tables of reference which we could not embody in the text; and it is possible that in a larger and more comprehensive work we may be able to include much matter omitted here, and give the Cape community a work much needed, namely, an accurate gazetteer of South Africa. We should also observe that we have touched but lightly on the regions north of Lake Ngami, including the great central valley of the Leambye and the adjacent regions. These are rather beyond our scope; and a full description of these countries, so soon after the publication of Dr. Livingstoue's valuable work, might have induced us to connect his discoveries with those of Dr. Barth and Capt. Speke, and so ascending north have finally terminated our labours on the shores of the Mediterranean.

APPENDIX.

[I]

Table of Geographical Nomenclature used as local terms in the Cape Colony.

LOCAL TERMS.	LANGUAGE.	CORRESPONDING ENGLISH EXPRESSION.
Agter	Dutch	Behind, as Agter Roggeveld (behind the Roggeveld).
Baai	,,	Gulf or bay.
Baaken	,,	A landmark.
Bad...	,,	A hot spring.
Berg	,,	A mountain.
Bergen	,,	Mountains
Bergjies...	,,	Little mountains.
Bokkeveld	,,	A country fit for the rearing of goats.
Bosch	,,	Thicket or forest.
Boschjes	,,	Little bushes as (Boschjesveld, a country covered with low bushes).
Bron	,,	A spring.
Burg	,,	A town.
Dal...	,,	A vale or dale.
Dorp	,,	A village.
Drift	,,	A ford.
Droogeveld	,,	A dry country or pasturage.
Duin or Duinen ...	,,	Sand-hills covered with bushes.
Eiland	,,	An islet (as Robben Eiland).
Fontein	,,	A fountain or spring.
Gat	,,	A deep reach or hole in a river.
Gebergte	,,	A large system of mountains.
Grasveld	,,	A grassy region.
Grensveld	,,	A frontier or border region.
Hangklip	,,	A rock or mountain which appears to overhang its base.
Hardeveld	,,	A hard or rocky country.
Heuvel	,,	A height.
Heuveltjie	,,	A little height.
Hoek	,,	A retired valley (literally, corner).

LOCAL TERMS.	LANGUAGE.	CORRESPONDING ENGLISH EXPRESSION.
Hoogeveld	Dutch	A high region.
Hoogte	,,	A height or eminence.
Kaap	,,	Cape.
Kamma	Hottentot	Water (the affix to many rivers, as Keiskamma).
Karroo	,,	A dry desert covered with certain low scrubby plants.
Klein	Dutch	Little (applied to certain districts, as the Klein Roggeveld, *i.e.*, the lesser).
Klip	,,	A large isolated rock (as the Paalklip, Hondeklip).
Kloof	,,	A pass through a mountain range, or between two ranges of mountains,—generally the bed of a river (literally, a cleft or split.)
Kolk	,,	A hole or pit.
Kop...	,,	A small isolated hill (literally, head).
Kopjies	,,	A group of small hills.
Koudeveld	,,	A term applied to a high Alpine region (literally, cold field).
Kraal	,,	A native village or cattle enclosure (literally, a tribe).
Kranz	,,	A rocky precipice nearly perpendicular (literally, crown or wreath).
Kuil	,,	A hole or cave.
Laagte	,,	A low situation or valley.
Land	,,	An extensive region or country outside the colony, as Kafirland.
Nek...	,,	A ramification of a mountain range, or a depression in the same.
Moeras	,,	A bog or marsh.
Mond	,,	A river's mouth.
Om or Um	Kafir	A prefix, signifying river (as the Umtata)
Omtrek	Dutch	A certain extent of country.
Plaats	,,	Location or place.
Poort	,,	A passage or opening in a mountain range (as Meirings Poort—literally, gate).
Puit...	,,	A well or pit.
Rand	,,	The highlands lying at each side of a river valley (as the Fish River Rand, &c.,—literally, edge).
Rivier	,,	A river, great or small.
Roggeveld	,,	A country well adapted for cultivating rye.
Rug...	,,	A rough, low hill (literally, little back).
Ruggens	,,	A country covered with the same.
Spitzkop	,,	A sugar-loaf or peaked hill.
Spruit	,,	A head or feeder of a large river.
Strandveld	,,	A region lying along coast.
Tafelberg	,,	A flat-topped mountain, as Table Mt.
Thab'	Kafir	Mountains, as Thab' Inkulu.
Trekveld	Dutch	A country not yet divided into farms, into which the farmers occasionally migrate.

LOCAL TERMS.	LANGUAGE.	CORRESPONDING ENGLISH EXPRESSION.
Uitkyk	Dutch	A locality from which an extensive view is obtained (literally, outlook).
Vallei or Vlei ...	,,	A collection of water or a hollow place, generally of natural formation, as De Beer's Vallei or Vlei (literally, valley).
Veld	,,	A large extent of country (as the Nieuweveld, Roggeveld, &c.,—literally, field).
Vlakte	,,	Flats or low plains.
Waschbank	,,	A country covered with white quartz and other rocks, looking, at a distance, like clothes drying.
Winterveld	,,	A region in which farmers have their winter locations.
Witte	,,	White (a local term generally applied to mountains whose tops are covered with snow during the winter season).
Zandveld	,,	A sandy region.
Zee	,,	The ocean.
Zoeteveld	,,	A country covered with sweet pasturage.
Zuurberg	,,	A name given to ranges of mountains of small elevation, covered with sour pasturage.
Zuurveld	,,	A country covered with sour pasturage.
Zwarte	,,	Black (a local denomination of many mountains).

[II]

Table showing the height of some of the principal Mountains and Plateaux of South Africa.

NAME.	LOCALITY.	HEIGHT IN FT.	AUTHORITY.
Mont aux Sources	Basutoland	10,000?	French Missionaries
Omatako Mountain	Damaraland	8,800	Galton & Andersson
Compassberg... ...	Graaff-Reinet	8,500?	
Komsberg	Roggeveld Mountains	8,100?	Barrow, from Col. Gordon
Great Winterberg...	Fort Beaufort	7,800	Dr. Atherstone.
Omhotozu	Damaraland	7,300	Galton & Andersson
Lievenberg	,,	7,200	,, ,,
Stormberg range ...	Queen's Town	7,000	Estimated average height.

NAME.	LOCALITY.	HEIGHT IN FT.	AUTHORITY.
Highest peak of Winterberg, in the Winterhoek range	Tulbagh	6,840	Sir T. Maclear, A. R.
Hangklip	Queen's Town	6,800	Colonel Tylden.
Gaikakop	Victoria East	6,543	Dr. Atherstone.
Sneeuwkop, highest peak of Cedar Mountains	Clanwilliam	6,335	Sir T. Maclear, A.R.
Plateau of Damaraland	Damaraland	6,000	Galton & Andersson.
Cockscomb, highest point of Winterhoek mountains	Uitenhage	6,000	Dr. Atherstone; highest point ascended by him, 5,697 feet.
Didima	Stockenstrom	5,871	Dr. Atherstone.
Highest point of Langeberg range	Swellendam	5,600?	Doubtful.
Rehoboth(miss. st.)	Great Namaqualand.	5,350	Andersson.
Zonder Ende Mountains	Caledon	5,330	Sir T. Maclear, A.R.
Kolomo	Zambezi River	5,300	Dr. Livingstone.
Otjomatunga... ...	Damaraland	5,189	Andersson.
Kamiesberg ...	Little Namaqualand.	5,130	Sir T. Maclear, A.R.
Sneeuwkop in Hottentots' Holland Mountains	Stellenbosch	5,066	,,
Plains of the Free State	Colesberg	5,000	General estimate.
Queba Mountains	Near Lake Ngami	4,800	Andersson.
Lake Dilalo	Most remote source of the Zambezi River	4,740	Dr. Livingstone.
Kabiskouw	Little Namaqualand	4,514	Sir T. Maclear, A.R.
Kolobeng	Betjouanaland	4,500	Dr. Livingstone.
Rietberg...	Little Namaqualand	4,500	Wiley.
Amhub	Great Namaqualand	4,480	Andersson.
Vogelklip	Little Namaqualand	4,343	Sir T. Maclear, A.R.
Barmen (miss. st.)	Damaraland	4,324	Galton & Andersson.
Morambala Mountains	Left bank of Zambezi near the coast	4,000	Dr. Livingstone.
Site of Town of Colesberg	Colesberg	4,000?	General estimate.
Kogelberg	Stellenbosch	3,988	Sir T. Maclear, A.R.
Bethany (miss. st.)	Great Namaqualand	3,945	Andersson.
Babylon's Tower...	Caledon	3,720	Sir T. Maclear, A.R.
Lake Ngami	Cape Colony	3,713 2,900	Andersson. Dr. Livingstone.
Kobis	Kalihari desert	3,706	Andersson.
Plateau of Bushman Flat	Little Namaqualand	3,602	Sir T. Maclear, A.R.
Lambert's Hoek ...	Piketberg	3,590	,,
Table Mountain ...	Cape division	3,582	,,

NAME.	LOCALITY.	HEIGHT IN FT.	AUTHORITY.
Linyanti	Betjouanaland	3,550	Dr. Livingstone.
Plateau of Bushmanland	Cape Colony	3,500	A. G. Bain.
Kalihari desert, average height	Kalihari desert	3,500	Andersson.
Plains of the Nieuweveld	Colesberg	3,500	General estimate.
Zwarteberg	Caledon	3,440	Sir T. Maclear, A.R.
Semalembue	Zambezi River	3,300	Dr. Livingstone.
Mount Messum	Damaraland	3,200	Capt. Messum.
Springbok Fontein..	Little Namaqualand	3,200	Wiley.
Riebeek's Kasteel	Malmesbury	3,109	Sir T. Maclear, A.R.
Plateau of Great Karroo	Cape Colony	3,000	A. G. Bain.
Piketberg	Piketberg	2,847	Sir T. Maclear, A.R.
Bokkeveldsberg ...	Calvinia	2,809	,,
Governor's Kop ...	Albany	2,750	Observed by aneroid barometer.
Heerenlogementsberg	Clanwilliam	2,381	Sir T. Maclear, A.R.
Signal Hill	Albany	2,250	Observed by aneroid barometer.
Zuurberg range ...	Uitenhage	2,000?	
Potteberg	Swellendam	1,920	Sir T. Maclear, A.R.
Lewisfonteinberg ..	Hardeveld, Clanwilliam	1,833	,,
Graham's Town, site of	Albany	1,728	Dr. Atherstone.
Capocberg	Malmesbury	1,508	Sir T. Maclear, A.R.
Mudge Point... ...	Bredasdorp	1,467	,,
Kloof Block-house	Near Cape Town	1,465	,,
Zumbo	Junction of Zambezi and Loangwa Rivers	1,440	Dr. Livingstone.
Patrysberg	Malmesbury	889	Sir T. Maclear, A.R.
Danger Point... ...	Bredasdorp	882	,,
Cape Point	Cape division	800	,,
Elandsberg	Near Coast.	619	,,
Hill near Cape Agulhas	Bredasdorp	528	,,

Of the heights marked thus ? the data are doubtful.

[II A.]

Table showing the principal Rivers of South Africa, south of the 20th
Area of

Names of Rivers.	Probable length of Main Artery: English miles.	Probable area of Drainage: square miles.	Names of Affluents, descending.	
			Right Bank.	Left Bank.
No. I.—*Rivers disemboguing into the Atlantic.*				
Swakop	250	12,600	None of any importance.	None of any importance.
Kaisep	100	6,000	None	None ... ...
Here about 400 miles of coast intervene without any river worth notice.				
Gariep or Orange ...	1,000	141,000	Cornetspruit: 1. Caledon. 2. Vaal and its affluents. *Right bank.*—Suikerbosch, Randspruit, Mooi, Schoonspruit, Nonne, Pogolla, Hart. *Left bank.*—Welge and Leibenberg Vlei, Rhenoosterspruit, Valsch, Great and Little Vet, Modder, and Riet. 3. Malapo or river of Kuruman and its tributaries 4. Nosop. 5. Keicop. 6. Great Fish or Borradaile.	Tees, Kraai, Welge, Stormbergspruit, Brokepoortspruit, Zuurbergspruit, Oorlogspruit, Zeekoe, Hondeblass, Ougars, Kat, Hartebeest, Zak, and Great Fish.

[II A.]

degree South Latitude, their Affluents, Length of Course, probable Drainage, &c.

Navigable or not.	Towns on or near main stream or its affluents.	Nature of country drained.	Remarks.
Not	None	Near the sea sandy and barren; in the upper part of its course the high table lands of Damaraland & north-west end of Kalihari.	Has no affluent of any importance.
Not	None	Do.	Do.
Not, except for boats a few miles above its mouth, which is barred. Extensive rapids in the middle part of its course.	Hope Town, Colesberg, Boshof, Philippolis, Aliwal North, Smithfield, Bloemfontein, Winburg, Harrismith, Frasersburg, Victoria West, Richmond, Dordrecht, Fauresmith, Boshof.	Near its source high table lands and fertile country; in the lower part of its course drains the Kalihari desert and barren table lands of Bushmanland.	Forms the northern boundary of the Cape Colony; rises in the Mont aux Sources, in the Quathlamba mountains; lower part of its course, as well as its immediate source, little known; probable fall from its head to the sea, 7,000 feet.

Names of Rivers.	Probable length of Main Artery: English miles.	Probable area of Drainage: square miles.	Names of Affluents, descending.	
			Right Bank.	Left Bank.
No. I.—*continued.*				
Buffels or Kousie River	90	3,600	Schaap	Komaggas ... ...
Zwartlintjies	30	600	None	None ... ...
Spoeg	20	150	None	None ... ...
Groen	70	4,000	None	Zwartdoorn ... ...
Olifants	150	25,000	Great and Little Doorn, Hantam, Holle, and Kromme.	None ... ...
Langevlei	30	900	None	None ... ...
Berg	100	1,800	Little Berg and some small affluents, 24 Rivers, Matjes.	Zout ... ...
Zout	40	600	None	None ... ...
No. II.—*Rivers disemboguing into the Indian Ocean.*				
Eerste	20	100	None	None ... ...
Palmiet	25	100	None	None ... ...
Bot	20	150	None	None ... ...
Ratel	15	...	None	None ... ...
Breede	190	5,800	Zonder Ende, Zout	Hex, Cogman's Kloof, Cornland.
Kafirkuil	30	600	None	Zoetmelk, Vette.

Navigable or not.	Towns on or near main stream or its affluents.	Nature of country drained.	Remarks.
Not	None	Very rugged and barren.	Copper deposits worked along the upper course of this river, which formed old colonial boundary. Very seldom flows.
Not	None	Do.	
Not	None	Do.	
Not	None	Drains Kamiesberg; country generally very dry and barren.	
Not	Clanwilliam	Draining a great portion of Karroo country; fertile where irrigated.	Great Karroo intersected by its tributaries; river rises in Great Winterhoek mountain.
Not	None	Drains Piketberg division; fertile in corn.	Forms large lakes near its mouth.
Navigable a few miles for cutters of 40 tns. burthen	Tulbagh, Wellington, Paarl Hopefield.	Very fertile corn & wine country	Enters the sea at St. Helena Bay; rises in Fransche Hoek mountains.
Not	Malmesbury, D'Urban, Darling.	Fertile in wheat.	Enters sea in Table Bay; rises near Riebeek's Kasteel.
Not	Stellenbosch... ...	Do. and wine ...	Enters sea in False Bay.
Not	None	Good sheep country.	
Not	Caledon	Do.	
Not	Breôasdorp, Napier	Do.	Enters sea near Cape Agulhas.
Navigable as high as Malagas for vessels of 150 tons.	Villiersdorp, Swellendam, Robertson, Ceres, Malagas, Heidelberg	Do.	Enters sea in St. Sebastian's Bay.
Not	Riversdale	Do.	

Names of Rivers.	Probable length of Main Artery: English miles.	Probable area of Drainage: square miles.	Names of Affluents, descending.	
			Right Bank.	Left Bank.
No. II.—*continued.*				
Gauritz, including the Gamka. No river of any size occurs along the coast between the mouth of the Gauritz and the Kromme, although the country is well watered by little streams running out of the Outeniqua mountains, which here approach the coast. From west to east we may mention	300	19,125	Gamka and its affluents, Dwyka, Bloed, Touws and affluents forming Groote River.	Olifant's, and its affluents, the Kammanasse and minor streams.
Great Brakke	...	...	None	None ... ...
Gwyang	...	...	None	None ... ...
Knysna	...	...	None	None ... ...
Keurbooms	...	...	None	None ... ...
Kromme	90	1,000	No affluent of any importance.	No affluent of any importance.
Gamtoos, called Groote above its junction with Kouga.	320	13,150	Buffels, Zout, Amos, Baviaan's Kloof, Kouga.	Kareiga, Doorn Riet.
Bakens	...	...	None	None ... .
Zwartkops	45	500	Elands, Brakke.	None ... .
Coega	60	800	None	None ... .

Navigable or not.	Towns on or near main stream or its affluents.	Nature of country drained.	Remarks.
Not	Beaufort, Oudtshoorn, Ladismith, Prince Albert	Drains the Great Karroo and Ghoup, and receives waters of the Zwarteberg and Nieuweveld ranges.	The name Gauritz is only known in lower part of its course; Gamka may be considered that of its upper course; it rises in the Nieuweveld mountains near Beaufort.
Not	Alliwal South ...	These rivers drain a tract of forest land lying between mountains & coast.	Enters sea in Mossel Bay.
Not	George Town.		
Not	Belvidere.		
Can be entered by small vessels; a fine lagoon within its mouth.	None.		Enters sea in Plettenberg Bay.
Not	None	Mountainous ...	Disembogues into St. Frances' Bay; rises at end of Langekloof.
Not	Murraysburg ...	Great tract of Karroo desert and mountain.	Its highest sources are found on the high plateau between Richmond & Graaff-Reinet, in the Uitvlugt.
Not	Port Elizabeth, Walmer.	Fertile.	
Not	Uitenhage, Bethelsdorp.	Fertile & mountainous.	Enters sea in Algoa Bay; rises in Winterhoek mountains.
Not	None	Good country for sheep.	Do.

Names of Rivers.	Probable length of Main Artery: English miles.	Probable area of Drainage: square miles.	Names of Affluents, descending.	
			Right Bank.	Left Bank.
No. II.—*continued.*				
Sunday's	220	8,000	Zwarte, Camdeboo, Bull, Brakke, Cumqua, Bezuidenhout's.	Milk, Little & Great Riet, Vogel, Shoemaker's, Witte, K'adouw, Little Sunday.
Boschjesmans	60	1,200	Little Bushman ...	New Year's, Nazaar.
Kareiga...	35	560	Assagai...	None ... ...
Kowie	30	360	None	Mansfield ... ...
Great Fish	28	12,900	Doorn, Spekboom, Little Fish, Botha's Hill, Ecca, Koome's, Kap.	Lt. and Gt. Brakke, Tarka and its affluents, Baviaan's, Koonap & its affluents—Kowie east, Mancazana west, Kaga, Kromme, Waterkloof. Kat & its affluents—Blinkwater, Mancazana east, Elands, Klu Klu, Clusie.
Gualana...	13	104	None of any importance.	None of any importance.
Beka	17	126	None	None ... ...
Keiskamma...	90	1,050	Isinuka, Amatola, Chumie, Gaga, Gwanga.	Debe, Umdizzini Tamacha.
Chalumna	18	150	None of importance.	None of importance
Buffalo	55	600	Gowokobi, Icheza, Iquiba or Groen.	Yellowwoods, Muotcha.

Navigable or not.	Towns on or near main stream or its affluents.	Nature of country drained.	Remarks.
Not	Graaff-Reinet, Jansenville, Aberdeen, Colchester.	Partly Karroo & fertile mountain valleys, forming fine sheep country.	Rises in south fall of the Great Sneeuwbergen.
Not	None	Good sheep country.	Rises behind the Zuurberg.
Not	Salem, Sidbury ...	Grazing & agricultural country.	Drains part of Lower Albany.
Not	Graham's Town, Bathurst, Port Frances.	Do.	Do.
Not	Cradock, Somerset, Bedford, Fort Peddie, Fort Beaufort, Middelburg, Riebeek, Tarkastad.	Upper part of course in Karroo country; lower part very bushy, good sheep country: many valuable farms.	Drains the eastern frontier, of which it was formerly the boundary; rises on north side of the Great Sneeuwbergen.
Not	None	Good pastoral and agricultural country.	These are inconsiderable streams, draining the coast between the Great Fish and Keiskamma Rivers.
Not	Wooldridge	Do.	
Not	Alice	Do.	Forms the late boundary between the Colooy and British Kaffraria, as far as its junction with the Chumie; drains a beautiful and fertile country, especially near its source.
Not	None	Do.	
Can be entered at mouth by small vessels.	King William's Town and East London. German villages.	Do.	The mouth of this river promises to become a port of importance when certain proposed improvements are carried out.

Names of Rivers.	Probable length of Main Artery: English miles.	Probable area of Drainage: square miles.	Names of Affluents, descending.	
			Right Bank.	Left Bank.
No. II.—*continued.*				
Kahoon ... . Gonubie ... ... Kwelegha... ... ... Kwenugha ... ... Ikuko	average 25 mls. each.	1,200 by all these streams	None of importance.	None of importance.
Great Kei (the principal branch is called Zwarte Kei).	170	7,000	Klip Plaats, Ituti, Windvogel, Doorn, Thomas, Kaboosie.	Klass Smits, Imvani, White Kei and its tributaries, Cacadu, Indwe, T'somo, Dogana, I'goa.
Several small streams of no importance here intervene— I'goa, N'gabaxa, &c.				
Bashee	110	2,500	Gulindoda, Ixuxa, Umgwali, Colosa.	Umgolo, N'gaga, Umtentu, Ibua.
Umtata	75	1,500	Scitale, Cicira, Cacadu, Neikasi.	Umyeka, Icambeli, Couana.
Umzimvoobo ,.. ...	150?	10,000?	Umwenganí Irinina, Icalili, Tena, Tsitsi, Umga.	Umzimkhlave, Imzimklava.
NOTE,—Nearly 100 small streams are found on the coast between the Great Kei and Umzimculu; none except those mentioned are of any importance. These small rivers seldom have a course more than from 10 to 20 miles in length, and their valleys seldom exceed 5 or 6 miles in width, and many not so much.				

Navigable or not.	Towns on or near main stream or its affluents.	Nature of country drained.	Remarks.
Not...	None	Good pastoral & agricultural country.	These small streams drain the coast slope of British Kaffraria from Buffalo to Great Kei.
Not...	Queen's Town, Whittlesea, Shiloh, Tyiden.	Very fertile country in upper part of course; lower part very rugged.	Zwart Kei rises in Great Winterberg, about 7,000 feet above sea; Klaas Smits and White Kei rise in Stormbergen; Klipplaats, in Gaika's Kop, forms the boundary between British Kaffraria and Kaffraria Proper.
			Hintza killed in 1836, near N'gobaxa.
Not...	None	Good pastoral country.	Upper sources are, in high cold table lands, but little known.
Not...	None	Do.	Rises in the Matuana mountains; sources but imperfectly explored.
Not...	None	Do.	The length, area, &c., of this river is only approximate, for its upper streams are very little known; rises in the Quathlamba, and drains a great portion of Kaffraria Proper. Its great western branches, the Tena and Tsitsi, rise in the Stormbergen, east, and drain the large bare table lands that stretch along coast slope of the Quathlamba.

Name of Rivers.	Probable length of Main Artery: English miles.	Probable area of Drainage: square miles.	Names of Affluents, descending.	
			Right Bank.	Left Bank.
No. II.—*continued.*				
Umzimculu	120	2,000	Ibisi, Umzimculand.	None of importance.
Umcomanzi	100	2,000	None	None of importance.
Ilovo	50	600	None	None of importance.
Umlasi	50		None	None of importance.
Umgani	80	1,500	None	None of importance.
Tugela or Utugela ...	220	0,000?	Blaauw Kranz, Great and Little Bushman's, Mooi.	Klip, Snnday's, Buffels.
Omvolozia or St. Lucia.	160	7,50C?	White Volozi	Baviaan's, Umpufana.
Mapootn	180	10,000?	Pongola, Mokanto...	Loosoolana, Tigerwolfe.
Oori or Limpopo	940?	250,000?	Ntolobatse, Omgaloze, Mahaholoukeina, Moguane, Lipalule or Olifants.	Aaps, Krokodil, Hex, Keitling, Mariqua, Ngotuane, Lebota, Prikui, Shoshe, Mzinyanti.

NOTE.—The rivers are given from north to south and from west to east, in names given.

The rivers east of the Tugela are so little known that it would be useless to between the Tugela and Delagoa, are the St. Lucien and the Umvolozi and its tributaries drain an immense extent of country, although its embouchure is not miles, and receives several considerable streams; it probably enters the sea either example) say at Sobia.

Navigable or not.	Towns on or near main stream or its affluents.	Nature of country drained.	Remarks.
Not	None	Good pastoral country.	Forms west boundary of the Natal colony: country drained by it as yet little known.
Not	None	Do.	Country drained not much known; very rugged.
Not	Byrne, Richmond.	Do.	
Not	None	Do.	
Not	Pietermaritzberg, Weston, Pineton, D'Urban.	Do.	Rises in outspur of Quathlamba, enters sea in Bay of Natal.
Not	Ladismith Weenen Colenso.	Do.	Drains principal part of the Natal colony; rises in Mont aux Sources; forms east bounda y of Natal in left front of its course.
Uncertain	None	Rich country.	Drains Zululand.
Not	None	Do.	Drains Amazwasi country, and falls into Delagoa Bay.
Not	Potchefstroom, Origstad, Zoutpansberg, Pretoria.	Do.	Drains Transvaal Republic and part of Betjouanaland.

the order in which they occur along the coast. Only popular or best-known

attempt a description of them; the only ones, however, of much importance, branches. North-east of Delagoa are several large rivers, and the Limpopo and yet exactly known. The Limpopo has a probable course of not less than 600 at Imumpoora or Imhumbane, although some travellers (Mr. Edwards, for

Abstract derived from Observations at Cape Town Observatory during Twenty-two Years, ending 31st December 1863.

MONTH.	Barometer at 32°.	TEMPERATURE. Mean temperature.	TEMPERATURE. Mean daily range.	TEMPERATURE. Mean of greatest range on any one day of each month.	TEMPERATURE. Mean of least range on any one day of each month.	TEMPERATURE. Mean of greatest range of each month.	HUMIDITY. Mean for each month.	HUMIDITY. Mean daily range.	Rain.	Cloudy Sky.	LIGHTNING. Recorded number of days during 22 Years.
	inches.	°	°	°	°	°	per cent.	per cent.	inches.	per cent. of visible hemisphere.	
January...	29·933	69·19	11·89	26·5	8·9	30·4	67·4	22·4	0·823	28	15
February	29·929	69·24	12·52	28·1	8·2	32·1	64·4	22·7	0·645	28	26
March	29·967	66·60	12·78	28·7	7·8	32·9	70·4	22·5	0·904	32	36
April	30·008	63·30	11·92	28·0	5·4	35·8	74·1	21·5	1·769	40	37
May	30·068	58·22	9·71	25·5	4·8	31·3	80·0	16·2	3·730	48	32
June	30·114	55·41	8·63	23·6	4·7	27·8	81·7	13·2	4·695	50	20
July	30·157	54·42	9·07	21·9	5·0	27·9	80·7	14·1	3·378	46	14
August	30·143	55·47	9·14	23·4	5·1	29·0	79·7	14·4	3·349	46	18
September	30·099	57·39	9·64	25·1	4·9	30·6	77·0	16·6	2·445	47	20
October...	30·048	61·01	10·63	25·9	6·9	32·3	73·0	19·4	1·316	41	18
November	29·988	64·33	10·93	25·2	8·3	29·7	69·4	20·2	1·132	38	8
December	29·950	67·79	11·95	27·1	9·4	30·1	67·6	22·1	0·538	29	20
Yearly means	30·034	61·86	10·63	25·75	6·6	30·8	73·78	18·8	24·724	39	264

Wynberg Meteorological Summary.

	Average.	
Rain during twelve months...	42·97 inches.	
Barometer's Maximum...	30·20 ,,	not standard.
Do. Minimum	29·50 ,,	not standard.
Do. Mean	29·85 ,,	not standard.
Shade Thermometer, Maximum...	98°2	
Do. Minimum	28°7	
Mean	52°63	
Night Maximum ...	84°	
Thermometer's maximum in sun	148°	
Dry and wet bulb, greatest difference ...	17°	
Mean	3°8	
Greatest force of wind, in miles, per hour	32 N. W.	
No. of calm days	117	
Do. of rainy do.	72	
Greatest amount of rain in one day	4·75 inches.	
Do. range of temperature	34°5	
Least do. do.	1°5	
Mean do. do. day	11°0	
Do. do. do. night... ...	8°0	

Prevailing winds N.W. and S., S. by W., and S.W.

The northerly winds prevail in summer, and are refreshing, reducing the temperature, and are not so violent as the westerly winds in winter.

The observed annual rain fall has been :—

In 1856... ...	40·06	In 1860... ...	35·398	In 1864	34·226
1857... ...	37·96	1861... ...	34·429	1865	36·473
1858... ...	42·41	1862... ...	66·		
1859... ...	59·813	1863 not observed.		Mean ...	43·974

Abstract of Meteorological Registers kept at the Lighthouse, Cape Agulhas, Latitude 34° 49′ Longitude 20° 0′ 45″, for the Year ending 31st December 1858.

MONTH.	BAROMETER.			THERMOM. OUTSIDE, IN SHADE.			Days on which rain has fallen.
	Max.	Min.	Range.	Max.	Min.	Range.	
January	30·190	29·730	...	76·4	69·5	...	11
February ...	30·090	29·720	...	76·5	61·5	...	7
March	30·220	29·750	...	72·5	59·5	..	5
April	30·190	29·499	...	72·5	48·5	...	9
May	30·370	28·650	...	62·5	48·5	...	6
June	30·260	29·690	...	67·5	50·5	...	7
July	30·260	29·750	...	60·5	46·5	...	7
August	30·200	29·610	...	62·5	46·5	...	13
September ...	30·210	29·650	...	61·5	47·5	...	6
October	30·250	29·760	...	70·5	56·5	...	6
November ...	30·210	29·750	...	70·5	56·5	...	3
December ...	30·220	29·600	...	72·5	63·5	...	3
Mean ...	30·225	29·762	·463	68·9	53·1	15·8	83

Abstract of Observations taken at the Royal Engineer Meteorological Observatory, Head Quarters, Graham's Town, Cape of Good Hope, between 1st of June 1857, and 31st May 1858.

Observations taken at 9·30 a.m.

MONTH.	Barom. corrected for index error, capiliary action, and to temp. 32°.		Ther. max. in sun's rays.	Thermometer, in shade.		Rain.	REMARKS.
	Max.	Min.		Max.	Min.		
1857.	inches.					inches.	
June	28·454	27·709	90·0	79·0	37·0	·59	On the 6th, a thunder-storm. On 10th and 11th, blowing a gale; max. force of wind per square foot, 12 lbs.: six vessels stranded in Table Bay. Weather this month very changeable.
July	28·697	27·840	89·5	79·0	35·0	2·37	There was a good deal of rain this month, accompanied with wind.
August	28·574	28·097	95·0	81·0	38·5	5·33	On the 6th, a thunder-storm, and also on the 9th. About half-past eleven p.m. on 14th, a shock of an earthquake was felt in Cape Town; one was experienced seven years ago; and one in 1811, much more violent, which overthrew some houses. Much rain this month.
September...	28·696	28·097	95·0	85·5	40·0	2·26	On 10th, thunder-storm; on 30th, another. Weather this month very pleasant.

Octoher	28·670	27·852	96·5	83·0	41·0	2·31	On 6th, stormy; max. force of wind, 13 lbs.; on 15th, thunder-storm; on 28th, another. Weather this month very pleasant.
November	28·372	27·964	98·0	87·0	46·5	4·66	On 25th, thunder-storm; on 31st Oct. & 1st Nov., a gale of wind, accompanied with much rain; max. force of wind, 14 lbs., and more than 2½ in. of rain. Weather this month changeable.
December	28·381	27·819	102·0	90·5	48·8	1·65	On 17th, thunder-storm; on 28th, another. Weather this month very fine.
1858							
January...	28·341	27·842	105·0	94·0	51·0	2·68	On 14th, very warm; afternoon, thunder-storm; and evening, a shower of hail. On 21st, a gale of wind; max. force, 13 lbs. At half-past ten p.m., 22nd, a beautiful lunar rainbow was visible. The moon was about 7° above the horizon, and half full; the arc had an elevation of 35°. On 30th, a thunder-storm. Weather this month very fine.
February	28·362	27·846	*121·5	106·5	52·0	1·46	On 11th, thunder-storm; one on 23rd also. The 6th* was the hottest day and night yet registered, hy ten degrees. Weather this month very hot and oppressive.
March	28·478	27·898	113·0	96·0	45·0	4·93	On 3rd and 27th, thunder-storms. Weather rather oppressive this month, with a good deal of rain.
April	28·523	27·657	104.0	88·5	44·0	2·39	On 9th and 10th, thunder-storms, accompanied with rain and hail. Weather this month very fine.
May	28·605	27·927	97·0	8.·5	40·0	1·55	Weather this month very fine.
						32·18	

[III]

Table of Chronological Events relating to the History of South Africa generally, physical and political.

B.C.	*First Period.—From earliest date till circumnavigation by B. Diaz.*
610-596	Circumnavigation of Africa by the Phœnicians in the time of Pharaoh Necho, according to Herodotus.
A.D.	
800	The coast of South Africa, as far south as Delagoa Bay (Dugutha of Arabs), latitude 28°, known to the Arabs.
1480	Sofala visited by a Portuguese, Pedrao Cavalhao, from Abyssinia, before the route to sea by India is discovered.
1484	Diego Cam, a Portuguese captain, and Behem, of Nuremberg, reach 22° south latitude, and erect a cross on Cape Padrone, or Cape Cross, near Walvisch Bay.
1486	Bartholomew Diaz plants a cross on Sierra Parda, in 24° south latitude, a few miles south of present Sandwich Harbour; lands at Cape Voltas, south of Orange River, now Alexander Bay; rounds Cape of Good Hope without seeing it, and lands in Angra des Vaqueino—September 14; lands and plants a cross on St. Croix Island, in Algoa Bay, and penetrates as far east as Great Fish River, which he calls after one of his captains, Rio del Infante. Sights Cape of Good Hope on his return voyage home.
1488	Cape of Good Hope called by B. Diaz Cabo del Totos Tormentos. Received its present appellation of Cabo de Boa Esperanza from John II of Portugal.
	Second Period.—From Portuguese discovery until settlement of Dutch at Cape of Good Hope.
1497	Vasco de Gama lands in St. Helena Bay, and was there wounded in the leg by the natives while taking the altitude of the sun—November 7; doubles the Cape on his way to India—November 19; discovers coast of Natal—December 25; and explores east coast as far as Melinda, including Delagoa Bay (called by him Aguaido de Boa Pax), Quillimane, and Mozambique. Rio del Infante, Portuguese admiral, landed in Table Bay.
1499	Vasco de Gama, on his return voyage, lands in Angra San Blas, now Mossel Bay; Bartholomew Diaz perishes off the Cape, in a ship of a fleet under Pedro Alvarez.
1500	Portuguese begin to form settlements on the west coast, in Angola; and about the same time the Kafir nation appears to have reached westward as far as the Great Kei River. Pedro Alvarez Cabral, commanding a division of a fleet to India, driven to the west, discovers the coast of Brazil—April 23; sailing east he lands at Mossel Bay.
1501	Pedro de Nueva touching at Mossel Bay, then Angra San Blas, found a letter in an old shoe, from P. de Alayde, which letter describes how affairs stand in India. Island of Ascension discovered by Joao de Nova Galega.
1502	Island of St. Helena discovered by Portuguese captain, Joao de Nova Galega, on St. Helena's day.
1503	Table Bay first visited by Antonio de Saldanha, commander of 3rd division of Albuquerque's fleet, and named Alguado de Saldanha.

A.D.	
1505	Mauritius and Bourbon Islands discovered by Portuguese.
1506	Lorenz d'Almeida first visits Madagascar. Town of Mozambique taken by the Portuguese under Tristan d'Acunha and Albuquerque.
1507	Portuguese proceed with their conquests on east coast.
1508	Francisco d'Almeida, Count of Abrantes, first viceroy and governor-general of Portuguese India, killed in conflict with the natives on the shores of Table Bay, towards the close of this year. Sofala conquered by the Portuguese. Isle of Tristan d'Acunha discovered.
1522	The only surviving vessel belonging to the squadron of the first circumnavigator, Ferdinand Magalhaens, doubles the Cape on her homeward voyage—May 6.
1525	The Portuguese, about this time, appear to have attempted the formation of a settlement on Robben Island.
1576	Perestrelli, the Portuguese explorer, arrived at Alguada de Saldanha (Table Bay)—28th June.
1578	Town of St. Paolo de Loanda built by Portuguese.
1589	Benguela visited by the English mariner Andrew Battel.
1591	English fleet under Captain James Lancaster, afterwards the famous Arctic navigator, anchors in Table Bay. Published description of Cape of Good Hope and Kaffraria given by the Portuguese Lopez, in his travels in the countries between the River Congo, the Cape of Good Hope, and the Nile.
1593	Sir J. Lancaster anchors in Algoa Bay, and is detained there by contrary winds six weeks.
1594	Cornelius Houtman draws the attention of the Dutch merchants to the east, and offers to act as pilot to a fleet to the Indies.
1595	First Dutch fleet, under Jan de Molenaar, consisting of four ships, Cornelius Houtman pilot and supercargo, anchors in Table Bay; voyage lasts two years and four months.
1598	Mauritius taken possession of by Dutch, abandoned a few years after; reoccupied in 1663, finally abandoned in 1708; occupied by French in 1712, and ceded to England in 1815.
1599	English East India Company established.
1601	English fleet under Lancaster again visits Table Bay. The Dutch admiral, G. Spielberg, gives to the harbour Alguada de Saldanha the name it now bears, Tafel Baai or Table Bay. Dutch captain Van Cowden visits and names Visch and Vleesch Bays.
1602	The Dutch East India Company first formed—March 20; Council of Seventeen appointed.
1605	Edict of Philip II of Spain, fulminating death to all inhabitants of the United Provinces who should engage in the Indian traffic.
1607	Dutch translation of Santo's work on East Africa, 1506, giving first description of Kaffirs. Davis, the celebrated Arctic navigator, visits Table Bay.
1608	Dutch admiral, Cornelius Maaklof, touches at Table Bay; he leaves three rams and seventeen ewes on Robben Island.
1609	Captain Keelay takes some sheep from Robben Island, the fattest he ever saw, and leaves lean ones. Pieter Botha first governor-general of Dutch East Indies.
1614	The English attempt a convict settlement on Robben Island. Variation of the compass at this time, according to Kolben, 6° north-east.
1615	Sir T. Rowe, ambassador from James I to the Great Mogul, touches at Table Bay—June 5.

A.D.	
1619	Resolution of the Chamber of Seventeen declaring the advisableness of founding a fort at the Cape of Good Hope, for the assurance of the refreshment necessary to the navigation of India and the preservation of the seafaring people, which is of much importance—Aug. 19.
1620	Formal possession of Cape of Good Hope taken by Captains Shillinge and Fitzherbert, in the name of His Majesty James I. First map of South Africa made by Lindschotten, at Amsterdam.
1626	Sir T. Herbert, traveller, lands in Table Bay, still called by the English Saldanba Bay. About this time, Table Bay appears as a place of great resort for ships of all nations, who were in the habit of leaving letters under certain stones, which are still sometimes found in Table Valley.
1642	Date of first French settlements in Madagascar.
1644	English form a settlement in Bay of St. Augustine, Madagascar; abandoned in 1650.
1648	Dutch Indiaman *Haarlem* wrecked in Table Bay.
1649	Jan Leendert and Nicolaas Pront, of the wrecked ship *Haarlem*, present a remonstrance to the Dutch East India Company, setting forth the advantage of making a fort and garden at the Cabo de Boa Esperanza. Van Riebeek first visits Cape as doctor, in the fleet of Wallebrandt Geluijsen.
1651	March 25.—Date of instructions by Dutch East India Company to commanders of expedition, to form a settlement at Cape of Good Hope.
	Third Period.—From settlement by Dutch until final occupation by English.
1652	Dr. van Riebeek lands in Table Bay, empowered to form a settlement at Cape of Good Hope—April 8. Fort commenced on the Zoete or Sweet River, the nucleus of the present castle, by Van Riebeek. A great zeekoe or hippopotamus killed in the Salt River—April 24. Four Dutch deserters attempt first journey into interior, and penetrate as far as Hottentot's Holland—September 24. The ringleader, Jan Blank, gets keelhauled, receives 150 lashes, and two years in irons as a slave. First recorded ascent of Table Mountain—September 29. First child born in the fort the Good Hope—June 6. A fort or redoubt commenced near Salt River, probably near present site of Craig's Tower—October 2. Herman van Vogelaar, volunteer, sentenced to one hundred blows from the butt of his musket, for wishing the purser at the devil for serving out penguins instead of beef and pork. Government gardens laid out for the supply of shipping with vegetables.
1653	This night, it appeared as if the lions would take the fort by storm—January 23. This afternoon, a wolf seized a sheep within sight of the herds—January 27. Abraham von Riebeek, son of the founder of the Cape, and subsequently eighteenth governor-general of the Dutch Indies, born at Cape Town—October 16. Corporal Muller, who had been sent to Saldanha Bay with three men on 13th October, returns on the 29th, having met many elephants, rhinoceroses, elands, harts, hinds, and other game. The Hottentot interpreter, Herry, absconded, taking with him all the cattle of the settlement, which is consequently reduced to great straits for provisions—October 19.

A.D.	
1654	A mineral found at the Cape, and tested by silversmiths, declared better than tin—Jan. 28. Settlement in great want of supplies. First mention in Van Riebeek's journal of Sonquas or Bosjesmen—March 6. "This day there was found on the mountain a dead bosmanneken, called in Batavia an ourang-outang, as large as a small calf, with long hairy arms and legs, of a dark grey colour, which our people eat from hunger, for there is little nourishment in the pot-herbs"—April 24. Council of Seventeen, in a despatch, refer to the valley behind Table Mountain, extending to Hout Bay, as very suitable for the growth of rice, wheat, and other grain. Mining speculations appear at this time to have attracted Van Riebeek's attention—January 28. He went out in person to inspect the place in the mountain, where he found large quantities of glittering ore. Young girls sent from orphan houses in Amsterdam to the Cape.
1655	A large rhinoceros killed near Salt River. "So many bullets rebounded from its body, that we were obliged to cut out a piece with axes, and then to shoot into its entrails between its ribs, and thus we killed it"—January 8. The chaplain's wife gives birth to a second son; all the other ladies are also soon likely to follow her example—August 12. An exploring party, under Corporal Muller, which left on the 7th September, return. They appear to have reached False Bay, and explored the Cape Peninsula—October 5." Despatch from Governor-General and Council of the Indies, dated December 25, says: "As to the proposal of Mr. van Goens, to cut off the Cape from the continent, such would indeed be a good thing if it could be easily effected. The formation of a stone pier, to extend 70 roods into the sea, we agree with you in thinking one of the most necessary things at the Cape."
1656	First land broken up for cultivation in Rondeboschjen, probably now Newlands.
1657	Jan Wouters, assistant, sentenced for blasphemous injuries against the characters of females at the Cape, including the commander's wife, to beg pardon on his bare knees, to be bored through the tongue, to forfeit his wages, and to be banished three years. Sentenced graciously in consequence of the pregnancy of his wife—March 15. The limits of Cape colony declared to extend north of the Cabo de Boa Esperanza to the north side of Sardingres Bay, with Dassen and Robben Islands to the east and south; jurisdiction unlimited.
1658	Pasqual Rodrigo, soldier, for theft and desertion, sentenced to receive one hundred lashes, confiscation of three months' wages, and to serve his term of five years to all dirty work. First cargo of slaves from Guinea arrived at Cape—March 26. First passage through the Berg River mountains effected by a party under Jan van Herwarden, through the Nieuwe Kloof—March 6. Use of dacha by the Hottentots mentioned. First burgher council nominated of four free men—June 22. The Hottentot interpreter Herry sent to Robben Island.
1659	A conspiracy discovered of the foreign soldiers in the garrison at the castle of the Cape, principally English, Irish, and Scotch, to seize the fort and murder all the Hollanders. The conspirators, five in number, sent to Batavia with Admiral Sterthemius, who happens to arrive in Table Bay—14th November. First war between colonists and natives, caused by cattle stolen by latter from near Liesbeek River.

A.D.	
1659	Peace made with Gonnoma Hottentots, through the agency of the Hottentot Khermeemoa or Herry. Dutch allowed to occupy three Dutch miles round fort. War with the Hottentot tribes in vicinity of Cape Town. Breeding of European sheep mentioned in a proclamation. "The freemen to be allowed to have European sheep, but not to slaughter any until they shall possess at least fifty"—Aug. 27.
1660	Expedition to Monomatapa, under Jan Duckert, sets out, crosses Berg and Olifant's Rivers, and probably reaches south edge of Namaqualand; Olifant's River at this time called by natives Tharakamma; meet the Namaquas. French ship *Le Maréchal*, to St. Augustine's Bay, wrecked in Table Bay; crew and passengers, including governor and bishop, disarmed and put under restraint until ships gets afloat again. Proclamation on the wreck of the *Maréchal*, with Roman catholic bishop on board, declaring "That no divine worship except that of the Reformed church is to be permitted"—May 22. Namaqua Hottentots first mentioned in colonial records.
1661	Cruythoff and Meerhoff's expedition to the country of Namaquas.
1662	Commander Jan van Riebeek embarks with his family for Batavia.—May 7. Commander van Wagenaar prays the Council of Seventeen to send him, by next ships, a little coarse window-glass and lead, to glaze the windows of the fort, now only covered with some coarse cotton, and a few common paintings, to cover the ugly, bare walls of our front hall, as well as two or three of our desolate dwellings—August 10. The Orange River appears to be mentioned in the old colonial records under the name of Vigita Magna; a party under Sergeant de la Guerre sent in search of it—October 20.
1663	The lions kill six or seven of the company's bullocks. Small-pox and measles epidemic. Commander van Wagenaar asks for two bells "to enliven the farmers in this lonely place."
1664	The island of Mauritius, surveyed by the Dutch in 1598, and resettled by them in 1663, "recommended as a proper locality to send your lazy debauched farmers of the Cape, should they be in debt, to keep up the garrison there." Finally abandoned in 1708. Number of free burghers at the Cape reckoned at fourteen. First vocabulary of Hottentot language made in the Greek character, by G. Wrede. Head and skin of "a furious lion brought into the fort, which had been with great danger, shot"—November 20.
1665	Colonial-bred horses offered for sale by the government—Feb. 21. Commander Isbrant Goske arrives, with precedence of the commandant while at the Cape, with instructions from the Council of Seventeen to build a new fort (the present castle), to be placed sixty roods east of original fort—August 19; the work, however, not commenced until 1672. *King Charles*, English man-of-war, from Surat, anchors in Table Bay; an unsuccessful attempt made to capture her by surprise. Willem van der Venter reports that he went with a party to Tygerberg, to bring home in a wagon a rhinoceros which he had shot the day before, and that they were surrounded and attacked by five terrible lions. Riebeek's property sold, "101 morgen cultivated land, under the Bosch Heuvel," with the "Schuur" thereupon (probably the place Westbrook, now the property of A. de Smidt, Esq.) Nov. 24.

A.D.	
1666	Small-pox and measles epidemic. Anthony Jans and Anthony Arents, for stealing a cabbage, offence tending to the ruin of this growing colony, sentenced to be flogged, to work in irons on Robben Island for three years, and forfeiture of four months' wages.
1667	Governor van Quaalbergen dismissed the company's service, for exchanging civilities with a French governor, homeward-bound, and not allowing him to "float on his own fins."
1669	Algoa Bay first visited by Dutch. Orders given to Commander Borghorst to take possession of Saldanha Bay, upon a report that the French had erected a baaken on it bearing their arms. Several miners sent to the Cape by the Council of Seventeen, to search for precious metals.
1670	Governor P. Hackuis dispatches the hooker *Grundel* to examine the coast to the north; it returns, 26th May, but finds no harbour except Grundel Bay (Angra Pequina), latitude 26° 36′. Expedition of the *Grundel* to the eastward loses seventeen men, who are left behind in the bay Os Medas de Cura.
1672	Hottentots' Holland sold to the company by Prince Dhour, for 81 francs. Contract between Commander Van Overbeek and Hottentot chiefs, to sell all land between Hout and Saldanha Bays for 4,000 reals paid for by merchandise worth only 33 florins—19th April. Isbrant Goske appointed first governor of the Cape of Good Hope; commences building the present castle—October 2. The *Flying Swan*, sent eastward in search of the seventeen men left behind in the *Grundel*, returns unsuccessful—September 2. The vessel was instructed not to touch at the bays Hout, Struys, Visch, Mossel, Content, Algoa, and Rio del Infante, which have been visited by our people by land, and tract most distant by said vessel. Commando sent against Gonnoma Hottentots—July 12.
1673	First establishment of Orphan Chamber. Expedition under Sergeant Cruse sets out against Gonnoma Hottentots. The *Flugt Zoetendal* wrecked near Cape Agulhas. The Hollander Ten Rhyne publishes a description of the Cape and country of Hottentots. Almost all the company's oxen lost in the quicksand at Salt River - September 19.
1675	Small-pox and measles epidemic.
1676	Commando sent against marauding Hottentots, near Honingberg. About this time the castle was nearly completed, and it appears the town was laid out; strength of garrison, 200 soldiers, 150 officers, clerks, sailors, &c. First government schoolmaster appointed.
1677	An expedition in the *Grundel*, under Corporal Hatma, explores the west coast to south latitude 12° 47′, as far as the Portuguese fort Sombeira, and reports, that although there are several good bays there is no good land or fresh water, and that near to Sombeira there are no other inhabitants than Hottentots—January 18. A proclamation issued by Governor Bax, exhorting the farmers to greater exertions in agriculture, because the directors had said that no country can be called a colony, which cannot grow its own corn—March 23. A proclamation issued, interdicting all farmers from keeping Hottentot sheep in their flocks—April 12. The mining speculation, carried on near the Lion's Head and Riebeek's Castle, discontinued, because the silver extracted (it seems there was ore, yielding 12, 8, and 6 per cent.) would by no means pay the expenses of working and smelting—October 18.

A.D.	
1678	Simon van der Stell appointed governor.
1679	Government gardens planted.
1680	A special placaat against the planting of tobacco by the colonists, on the ground that tobacco is bartered with the Hottentots for ivory and cattle, to the detriment of the honourable company; confiscation of the tobacco and pecuniary penalties for the first and second offences, public whipping for the third—April 8.
1682	An English vessel in distress puts into Table Bay and seduces forty-three of the garrison to desert. Placaat against duelling—Jan. 23. Placaat prohibiting tradesmen to carry knives or other sharp weapons—Feb. 27.
1683	English ship *Johanna* lost in Algoa Bay; crew found their way to Cape Town. Simon van der Stell makes a journey as far north as the Koperbergen, in Little Namaqualand. A storm is noted, of twelve days and nights, on the bank of Agulhas—April 10.
1684	Fifty farmers and mechanics and fifty young maids are sent out from Amsterdam to the Cape, and settled about Stellenbosch and Drakenstein; Stellenbosch, Paarl, and Drakenstein settlements formed about this time, by S. van der Stell; Simon's Bay called after Simon van der Stell. A hunting party of boers, in the interior, first meet with the Kafirs. *Stavenisse*, Dutch East Indiaman, wrecked on coast of Kaffraria. Captain Wood Rogers, the buccaneer, visits Natal, of which he writes a description.
1685 to 1688	Emigration of French Huguenots to the Cape commences. Three hundred men, women, and children arrive, before 1690, and settle down in the neighbourhood of the Paarl and Stellenbosch. Constantia first planted by S. van der Stell.
1685	First grant of land situated in Table Valley, registered in the Surveyor-General's office, Cape Town, in favour of H. Cruse—June 22. Baron von Rheede, lord of Drakenstein, visits the Cape as commissary-general, to look into the administration of the government, and makes many alterations and ordinances. First government surveyor appointed.
1686	Shipwreck of Siamese ambassador on Cape Agulhas—April 27. Wreck of ship *Bonaventura*, near Natal—December 25. Van der Stell allows Jesuits to erect a temporary observatory in the gardens, near present site of St. George's Church. Father Tachart observes variation of compass at 11° 30′ west; he fixes longitude of Cape Town 46° 30′ east of meridian of Ferro.
1687	Regulation of Council of Seventeen as to terms on which the French refugees will be allowed to become settlers.
1688	Kafirs advance as far west as Great Fish River. An expedition by land, under Isaak Schyver, ordered to proceed to Rio de la Goa, to explore the country—Dec. 24.
1689	Ensign Schupen's mission to the Inqua Hottentots, near the Gamtoos River. Proprietors of land in the country ordered to plant one hundred young oaks on each grant—July 18.
1690	Bay of Natal and surrounding country purchased from the natives by the Dutch.
1691	The rajah of Tambara banished to the Cape by the governor-general of the Dutch Indies.
1695	Earthquake at the Cape—September 7.
1696	The celebrated buccaneer, W. Dampier, touches at Table Bay on returning from his voyage round the world.
1697	Date on castle bell, which still rings the hours.

A.D.	
1698	Leguat states number of houses in Cape Town at 300, Kolben, some years after, at 200; the latter probably is right. All the houses thatched, in consequence of the high winds.
1699	W. A. van der Stell succeeds his father as governor: his father lives retired near Stellenbosch, and dies and is buried in great magnificence in 1712
1700 to 1705	About this time appears to have been founded, by the rather fast governor Van der Stell, the governor's "lusthuis" and gardens, at Newlands; the "lusthuis" in the government gardens, now Government House; the brewery, near Newlands of Jac. Louwen, now Cloete's; and Simon van der Stell's magnificent country seat, at Hottentot's Holland, the present estate of the Theunissen family; besides various buildings in the castle. Batteries first erected at Camp's Bay. The water-course now forming the Heerengracht sewer first lined with brick, to prevent damage to church and hospital.
1701	Settlement of Roodsand or Waveren, now Tulbagh, formed behind the Berg River mountains, called after the Waveren family of Amsterdam, the maternal ancestors of Simon van der Stell. All the company's servants at the Cape obliged to give up their landed property.
1702	An exploring party of forty-five burghers and four wagons travel east, into the country of the Kaffirs.
1704	Foundation of Dutch Reformed church, near government gardens, laid.
1705	Thirty or forty farmers, each with a Hottentot servant, proceed northward to explore the country (probably the Hantam and Roggeveld). Landdrost Starenberg leads an expedition into Namaqualand. Captain Dampier, in the *St. George*, homeward-bound, touches at Table Bay. Number of free burghers estimated at 450. In Kolben's prospect of the Cape, about this date, the government gardens, old jetty near castle, Dutch Reformed church, and castle appear; two gallows occupy a prominent position. The supply of water appears to have been pretty much the same as at present. "The stream from the Table Hill turns a mill belonging to the company, from thence it passes through long pipes to the square or Place des Armes, between the fortress and Cape Town, where through pumps it plentifully supplies both the town and fortress with the most delicious water for drinking; it discharges itself into the harbour" (ditch now filled up, near Commissariat department).
1706	Complaints reach home accusing Governor A. van der Stell of various acts of tyranny, oppression, and peculation. Earthen envelope to castle first formed. Proceedings of Governor W. A. van der Stell against Du Toit and others, for sedition and conspiracy—June.
1707	Governor W. A. van der Stell recalled and disgraced for various acts of tyranny and jobbing. The honourable company's servants forbidden to traffic in corn, wine, and cattle. Tide ebbs and flows seven times in Table Bay, between 8 and 10 a.m. Variation of compass 11° 15′ west, according to Kolben. Epidemic rages among slaves.
1708	The Cape colony included at this date the present divisions of Cape, Malmesbury, Paarl, Stellenbosch, and parts of Caledon and Tulbagh; the stock consists of 130,000 sheep, 20,000 head of cattle, 2,000 slaves.

A.D.	
1708	False Bay surveyed by order of Governor van Assemburg. A deputation of Namaqua chiefs wait on Governor van Assemburg. Proclamation of Governor van Assemburg, restoring to their rights as burghers, &c., all persons who had been proceeded against and punished by Van der Stell—April.
1709	False Bay surveyed and declared a safe harbour.
1710	The village of Stellenbosch destroyed by fire. A mighty wind blew the waters of False Bay in great floods up the country. When the waters retreated, thousands of bushels of fish were found on dry land.
1711	Building of old gaol commenced—March.
1712	Old Simon van der Stell dies and is buried with great pomp; his monument will probably be found amongst those taken down in Dutch Reformed church.
1713	Small-pox very destructive at Cape, especially to the aborigines. Kolben leaves the Cape.
1714	About this period Constantia farm begins to be celebrated for its wines. Marquis de Chavonnes, a Huguenot French nobleman, governor till 1724. Debt registry established—June 19. Educational arrangements made for the colony. Matters to be taught: "The Lord's prayer, commandments, creeds, prayers for morning and evening, grace before and after meals, and the catechism." No books to be used except those authorized in Holland. Schoolmasters, &c., to signify their assent to the articles of the synod of Dordrecht—Aug. 21.
1715	The statutes of India, collected by Dutch government towards the end of 17th century, applied to the Cape.
1719	Captain G. van der Schelling reaches the Cape from Algoa Bay. Chavonne battery first built.
1720	Expedition directed to proceed to Rio de la Goa and Natal, and there form settlements—Dec. 10.
1721	Expedition left Cape Town to establish a port at Natal; cannot find the place, and proceed to Algoa Bay—14th February. Steeple of Dutch Reformed church erected.
1722	Church at Stellenbosch burnt.
1723	Report received that the establishment at Rio de la Goa was in a bad state, and robbed by pirates—July 12. Orders given to strengthen fort—Sept. 16.
1724	An attempt made to introduce woolled sheep by Batavian government. Orders issued to examine minerals at De la Goa—May 22.
1725	Sale of bread and cattle first made free at Cape.
1726	An order received by Jan de la Fontaine, acting governor, from the Council of Seventeen, to discontinue the breeding of woolled sheep. The establishment at Rio de la Goa amounted to 200 souls. Great anxiety to conceal from the English the real state of De la Goa. A sample of oil sent to Europe.
1727	Experiments on gold dust from Rio de la Goa: found to be sand.
1729	Orders received from Europe to abandon Rio de la Goa, but to examine previously where two parcels of gold dust were obtained. Thirty Europeans massacred there.
1730	Establishment at Rio de la Goa finally abandoned—June 11.
1731	Decree issued for an expedition to Terra de Natal, which fails.
1732	Quitrent, freehold, and loan possession defined—Feb. 18.
1737	The *Yperde*, *Goudman*, *Flora*, *Paddenburg*, *Westerwyk*, *Buys*, *Duynbeek*, *Redewys*, East India Company's ships, wrecked in Table Bay during a fierce gale; 207 lives lost—20th May.

A.D.	
1737	The Dutch East India Company order their vessels to winter in Simon's Bay, and large buildings erected there. In consequence of the murder of some hunters, licences no longer granted to hunt in the Kafir country.
1739	Earthquakes at Cape—5th and 7th September. First Moravian mission formed by G. Schmidt, on site of present Genadendal; existed till 1744. Gamtoos River fixed as the colonial boundary to the east.
1742	Farmers generally extended into the Roggeveld, Nieuweveld, and Sneeuwberg country. Five Hottentots having been baptized by the Moravian missionary Schmidt, he was, by a resolution of the government, prohibited from baptizing Hottentots for the future. In 1743 he is compelled to leave the Cape. In this year a parish clerk, accused by the churchwardens of heresy and of being associated with great Hottentot converter, as Schmidt was designated, is ordered to Batavia. Baron Imhoff, 27th goveruor-general of Dutch India, arrives at Cape, and is solemnly installed at the castle with great ceremony—June 21. Dutch Reformed church at Waveren built.
1744	Commander Anson, in the *Centurion*, arrives in Table Bay on his voyage homeward. Loan places, or annual tenures at will of government, have extended as far north as the north side of Piketberg. Order binding the youngest attorneys to practise for the church fund without fee.
1745	Division of Swellendam formed, called after Hendrik Swellengrebel, governor from 1739 to 1751. Attempt to construct a stone breakwater or wall in Table Bay.
1751	La Caille arrives at Cape to measure arc of meridian; completes his measurements in 1753. La Caille lodged at No. 2, Strand-street, now Messrs. Searight's store; his observatory was in the back court, north-west side. The town now extends east as far as Plein-street. Ryk van Tulbagh, formerly a private soldier, appointed governor—March 20, and remains governor twenty years. Ryk had only one eye, but he appears to have been an excellent, warm-hearted old fellow.
1754	A baaken erected in Algoa Bay, by the Dutch East India Company, near the Swartkops River.
1755	*Doddington*, East Indiaman, lost on Doddington Rock, near Bird Island, Algoa Bay—July 17. Small-pox in Cape. Foundation-stone of town-hall laid by Barend d'Artoys, and new burgher guard—November 18.
1755—6	Fortifications first erected in Muizenberg Pass.
1756	Trade continues to be carried on with Rio de la Goa. 5,800 lbs. of ivory imported from Rio de la Goa.
1760	The Cape colony now consists of divisions of Cape, Stellenbosch, and Swellendam.
1761	Hoppe's expedition to the north sent out by Governor van Tulbagh. Mr. Dessin bequeathed his valuable library of nearly 5,000 volumes, and some choice old paintings, to form nucleus of a public library, in trust to Dutch Reformed church.
1762	C. Rykvoet's report to R. van Tulbagh on the Namaqua copper mines—May 2.
1766	Earthquake at Cape, in July. Commodore Byron, in the *Dolphin*, arrives in Table Bay, on his voyage homeward-bound—Feb. 13. Small-pox at Cape.
1767	Small-pox and measles epidemic at Cape.

A.D.	
1768	Captain Wallis, circumnavigator, arrives in Table Bay in the *Dolphin*—Feb. 4. Captain Carteret, circumnavigator, arrives in Table Bay—Nov. 28.
1771	Baron van Plettenberg appointed governor—Aug. 12. Old Ryk van Tulbagh dies, much regretted. Captain Cook, in the *Endeavour*, arrives in Table Bay, on his first voyage homeward-bound. Bernardin St. Pierre, author of "Paul and Virginia," visits the Cape.
1772	Mason, deputed by directors of new Botanic Gardens at Kew, leaves, until 1774, for the Cape, collecting plants King of Madura confined by Dutch East India Company on Robben I sland. Sparrman, the traveller, arrives in Cape Town, and travels till March 1776. Captain Cook, outward-bound on his second voyage, arrives in Table Bay. Thunberg, naturalist and traveller, arrives in Table Bay. The leases of several farms on the Zwartkop's River cancelled, as being outside the colonial boundary; re-occupied in 1775. Foundation of new hospital, now main barracks, laid by Governor van Plettenberg. The old hospital stood opposite present Dutch Reformed Church.
1773	Wreck of *Jonge Thomas*, and heroic rescue of crew by Woltemade, who perishes—May 29.
1774	Nelson, then a junior officer, touched at the Cape on his way to the East Indies.
1774 to 1777	Great commandoes against Bushmen; in three last commandoes 503 Bushmen killed and 241 prisoners taken; one boer killed.
1776	Lieut.-Governor Henning tried to introduce Spanish sheep into the colony, but was frustrated, says Cook, by the people, who thought the fat of the native breed could not be compensated by wool. The *Resolution*, Captain Cook, and *Discovery*, Captain Clerke, outward-bound, arrive in Table Bay on their third voyage.
1777 to 1779	Paterson and Colonel Gordon penetrate north to the Orange River, so named by the latter.
1778	Governor van Plettenberg makes a journey into the interior, and erects a baaken on the Zeekoe River, a few miles west of present town of Colesberg.
1779	Demand of redress of grievances by the Cape burghers from the home government. Commando against Bushmen.
1780	By a deed of burghership granted this year to J. H. Gous, a tailor, formerly a soldier, "He is graciously allowed to practise his craft as a tailor, but shall not be allowed to abandon the same, or adopt any other mode of living, but when it may be deemed necessary to go back into his old capacity and pay, and be transported hence, if thought fit." English fleet, under Commander Johnstone, intend to invade the Cape, meet the French fleet, under Admiral Suffren, at St. Jago. Suffren, after the fight, arrives at Table Bay, and puts it in a state of defence. Commander Johnstone captures a Dutch fleet in Saldanha Bay. Cango caves, in division of Oudtshoorn, discovered by a boer hunting in the mountains. The lines from Fort Knokke to Zonnebloem constructed by the French forces in Admiral Suffren's fleet. Great Fish River declared colonial boundary to the east. Andrew L. Koluer, first pastor of Lutheran church, Strand-street. Commando against Kafirs. First whale fishery established.
1781	Commander Jarsveld's report on the celebrated "tobacco" commando against the Kafirs—July 20. Admiral Sonnerat at the Cape. Amsterdam battery built. Martin Melck, the founder of the Lutheran church, Strand-street, dies—July 23.

A.D.	
1782	The French naturalist Le Vaillant arrives at the Cape—April; travels till 1785. Governor van Plettenberg proclaims a paper currency—April 30. Paper notes of two stivers each issued —June 25. Proclamation of Van Plettenberg against forged notes in circulation. Wreck of the East Indiaman *Grosvenor* on the coast of Kaffraria, between the Uzimvubo and Uzimculu Rivers. Many of the female passengers taken as wives by the natives, from whom have descended the late chief Daapa, the Queen Nonibi, and many other Kafir chiefs—August 4. French troops arrive at Cape to strengthen garrison. The burghers J. and F. Revs pray for permission to build a bridge over Berg River; refused, on the ground of the injury it would do the pontoon-keepers.
1782 to 1786	Many of present buildings in the castle reconstructed and rebuilt during this period (date on key-stone of centre archway, 1782) by Governors van Plettenberg and van der Graaff.
1783	Publication of *Nederlandsch Afrika* contains severe strictures on government of Cape. Old church-yard at Stellenbosch sold, in ten lots, for 10.630 florins.
1785	Cornelius van der Graaff governor—Feb. 14. The East Indiaman *Pigot* puts into Algoa Bay and lands some of her passengers, who travel overland to Cape Town. This event causes the formation of the division of Graaff-Reinet, "to prevent any foreigners from settling at the Baai Algoa." Delegates sent home to represent grievances of the burghers to the government.
1786	Division of Graaff-Reinet formed, and town founded. Adult males in colony, 3,238. Government magazine at Mossel Bay built. Two troops of burgher dragoons formed at Graaff-Reinet.
1790	Expedition in search of the crew of the *Grosvenor* starts, under the command of J. van Reenen—Aug. 24, and reaches the wreck on the 15th Nov.
1791	The circumnavigator Vancouver touches at Simon's Town; finds variation of compass 25° 40′ west. Commission appointed by the Stadtholder of United Provinces to inquire into abuses of Dutch Company's settlements.
1792	Moravian missions renewed at Genadendal. Great commando against Bushmen. Slaves professing the Christian religion declared admissible to communion of the church.
1793	One flock of merino sheep introduced into the Cape by Colonel Gordon, and sold after his death to some settlers on their way to New South Wales, where they formed the origin of the flocks of the enterprising J. McArthur. Commissioners Nederburgh and Frykenius arrive from Holland to inquire into abuses and grievances of government. Great commando against marauding Hottentots. Lombard Bank established to prevent usury, there being a dearth in the money market.
1794	The commission leave the Cape for Java, investing with their powers Mynheer Sluysken, who subsequently surrendered the colony to the English fleet. The farm Constantia has to deliver, annually, to the government sixty half-aums of wine, at twenty-five rixdollars each.
1795	Great dissatisfaction among the boers of Graaff-Reinet and Swellendam; the landdrosts of both these divisions expelled, and thrust beyond the boundaries of the districts; a free republic declared at Swellendam. Republic of Seven United Provinces overturned by the French. Admiral Elphinstone and General Craig arrive with a fleet in False Bay, force the Muizenburg passes, and advance upon Cape Town—June.

A.D.	
1795	Cape capitulates to the English—Sept. 16. General Craig first English governor at the Cape.
1796	General Craig builds the batteries on Devil's Hill and Craig's Tower. Fort Frederick, Algoa Bay, built. First native regiment of Hottentots raised by General Craig. Duke of Wellington, then Lieut.-Colonel Wellesley, at the Cape; lodged in the house now Solomon's printing office. Ship *Hercules* lost near mouth of Beka. The Graaff-Reinet boers expel the landdrost, Mr. Bresler, sent them by Sir J. Craig. Perceval travels in Cape. About this time, the Hottentot Afrikander murders his master Pinnaar, in the Hantam, and flies with a party of runaway slaves and banditti to the Orange River, where, for many years, he carries on a system of marauding on the Korannas and other tribes living there; drives the Korannas, under Barend Barends, far to the eastward; where, collected by the missionary Anderson, they formed the nucleus of the present Griqua community. The present Jonker Afrikander is the grandson of this Afrikander. Commando against Bushmen.
1797	Earl Macartney, appointed governor of the Cape colony ("De Oude Edelman" of the Dutch boers), arrives—May 4. The traveller Barrow arrives with Lord Macartney, and travels through the colony until 1799. Conrad Buys, a rebel colonist, takes refuge with Gaika, and marries that chief's mother. Kafir chief Gaika attacks the chief Tslambie, his guardian, and takes him prisoner; the retainers of Tslambie cross the Fish River and take up their abode in the Zuurveld. About this time, a portion of the Tslambie tribe of Kafirs migrate to the north, towards the Orange River, and being driven south again by the attacks of Mantatee, Basuto, and other tribes, their descendants now form the Praamberg and Schietfontein Kafirs, being located there since 1829. Commando against Bushmen in the Cold Bokkeveld. Bath-house at Caledon built.
1798	Population of colony, not including army and navy, declared to be 21,746 whites, 25,754 slaves, 14,447 Hottentots; total, 61,947. Semple travels in Cape colony. The colonial boundary proclaimed by Lord Macartney to be the Great Fish River, Tarka, Bamboesberg, and Zuurbergen, to the Plettenberg Baaken; and along the south edge of Bushmanland to the Kamiesberg; and along the Buffel's River to the Atlantic. Revolt of Graaff-Reinet boers suppressed by General Dundas. Kafirs and Hottentots attack the boers in the Zuurveld, and penetrate as far east as Plettenberg Bay and the Cayman's River, near George. Lieutenant Chumney and party of 81st regiment cut off by the Kafirs, near Bosjesman's River. The Earl of Mornington, after Marquis Wellesley, governor-general of India, visits the Cape. Colonel Lacorda crosses Africa from the west to east coast. The burgher senate refuse the use of the town hall to the British governor, to celebrate the king's birthday—May 30.
1799	Missionaries Van der Kemp and Kicherer arrive at Cape—Feb. H.M. ship *Sceptre, Oldenburg,* Danish man-of-war, and seven other vessels driven ashore at Table Bay. First foundation of London Missionary Society in the Cape. The missionary Van der Kemp takes up his abode at Gaika's kraal, then situated near present site of Fort Beaufort; leaves it shortly after, and proceeds to Graaff-Reinet.
1800	Bastard Hottentots, called Griquas, first collected from roaming along the northern deserts of the colony by the missionary Anderson and settled down about the junction of the Kei and the Gariep.

A.D.	
1800	*Government Gazette* first established. Freemasons' lodge "De Goede Trouw" founded. Wall built round government gardens by Governor Sir G. Young.
1801	Peace of Amiens; the Cape to be restored to the Batavian republic. Messrs. Truter and Somerville make a journey into Betjouanaland, and are the first European visitors to the Betjouanas. Mission station amongst the Bushmen on the Zak River, called De Oude Kerk, formed by the missionary Kicherer; abandoned 1806. Village of Zwartland, now Malmesbury, founded. First printing office. Lease granted to Walker and Robertson; withdrawn a year after, and all printing put under government superintendence. First paper money issued under British government.
1802	First establishment of the Hottentot mission at Bethelsdorp, under Van der Kemp—March 7. Dr. Lichtenstein arrives in Cape Town in December, and travels in interior till 1805; dies at Berlin, 1858. Freemasons' lodge, Bouquet-street, built by J. Thibault, architect. Commando against Bushmen and Kafirs in Graaff-Reinet district, under Major Sherlock.
1803	Cape evacuated by the English, in compliance with an article of the peace of Amiens. General Janssens governor, and Van der Mist commissioner-general—Feb. 19; Batavian flag hoisted—21st. Vaccine committee first formed. Treaty between General Janssens and Chief Gaika. General Janssens at Algoa Bay, meets with Kafirs and Hottentot chief, Klaas Stuurman—May 8. A monthly post established to Algoa Bay—June 13.
1804	Great fire at Stellenbosch. Districts of Tulbagh and Uitenhage formed. General Janssens changes name of mission station at Baviaan's Kloof to Genadendal. First establishment of the institution "Tot nut van 't Algemeen." Stephanus, a foreign impostor, flies from Cape Town, for forgery, and takes refuge amongst the Koranna tribes, on the Orange River, where he passes for a prophet, and builds a church a few miles east of the junction of Hartebeest and Orange Rivers; afterwards murdered by the natives.
	Fourth Period.—From second capture of the Cape to 1858.
1806	Signal given that an English fleet is in sight—Jan. 4. Battle of Blaauwberg—Jan. 8. Cape Town capitulates to the English forces under Sir D. Baird—Jan. 10. Final capitulation of General Janssens—Jan. 27. W. T. van Ryneveld appointed chief civil magistrate. Formation of a corps of Hottentot infantry, afterwards called the Cape Mounted Rifles. London Missionary Society first established missions beyond the Orange River. Zak River mission station abandoned.
1807	Lord Caledon appointed governor—May 22. Small-pox appears in June; patients removed to Paarden Island. Last cargo of slaves landed at Cape. The Buitenkant the outside limit of the town to the south-east.
1808	Dr. Cowan and Captain Donovan leave Cape on a journey into the interior; they reach the Malapo River, near present Kuruman, and are supposed now to have died of fever near the Limpopo, although at the time, thought to have been murdered by native tribes. Slave-trade abolished by British parliament. Great visitation of locusts in Cape colony. Village at Jan Dissel's Vlei, now Clanwilliam, first formed.

A.D.	
1808	Groenekloof or Mamre mission station founded. Government discount bank formed.
1809	Severe shock of earthquake at the Cape—Dec. 4. Colonel Collins crosses Stormberg Spruit on his tour of exploration, and discovers the Caledon and Kraai Rivers (called by him the Grey River), in present Albert division; he also reports on the Outeniqua and Knysna forests. Lord Caledon's proclamation as to the unlawfulness of retaining Hottentot children as apprentices.
1810	Dr. Burchill lands at the Cape—Nov. 26, and travels till 1814. The New Cut, present Capel-ditch, first formed, to prevent old water-course from encroaching on the Buitenkant. Iron water pipes first laid down in Cape Town.
1811	Shocks of earthquake at Cape—Jan. 2 and June 10. Circuit courts first established—May 12. Division of George formed. Sir J. Cradock, afterwards Lord Howden, governor—July. Variation of compass at Klaarwater, 27° W. Death of Dr. van der Kemp. Great comet visible. Village of Zwarteberg, now Caledon, founded. Commando under Colonel Graham assembled—Oct. 8. Vaccine institution formed—Dec. 12. Kafirs expelled the Zuurberg, and driven beyond the Great Fish River. Death of the elder Stockenstrom, killed by the Kafirs in the Zuurberg—Dec. 28. British Freemasons' Lodge, No. 409, constituted. Naval dockyard transferred from Cape Town to Simon's Town.
1812	Study of English language recommended by proclamation—Feb. Small-pox at Cape—June; persons not being vaccinated prohibited to appear in public. Head-quarters of Cape Corps in the Zuurveld to be called Graham's Town—Aug. 14. Mr. J. F. Reitz commences breeding Spanish sheep at Zoetendalsvlei, near Cape Agulhas. Missionary Campbell's first journey in the interior. Present market built by French prisoners. Government express their intention to grant lands on perpetual quitrent—Oct. 16.
1813	Riding over Grand Parade, Cape Town, prohibited. Tenders for the erection of a drostdy-house and gaol, Graham's Town, called for. Village of Zwarteberg to be called Caledon. Mission station at Pacaltsdorp established. Sub-drostdys of Cradock and Clanwilliam established. Spanish wool from interior to enter Cape Town market duty free.
1814	The celebrated Irish comedian, Tyrone Power, at this period serves in the Commissariat department at the Cape. Zuurveld to be called Albany—Jan. 7. Village at Jan Dissel's Vlei is to be called Clanwilliam—Jan. 21. Sub-district of Graaff-Reinet to be called Cradock. Lord C. Somerset appointed governor of colony—April 6. New church at Simon's Town to be called St. George's. Church at Uitenhage commenced. Mission station at Steinkopf, or Kookfontein, in Little Namaqualand, founded by London Missionary Society.
1815	Cape of Good Hope definitely ceded to England by treaty of Paris. Establishment of present court of justice—Jan. 19. *Arnisten*, East Indiaman 1,500 tons, from Ceylon to England, lost on Cape Agulhas; 344 persons, including Lord and Lady Molesworth, perish—May 30. Dr. Latrobe, traveller, arrives in Cape—Dec. 24. Boer rebellion in Graaff-Reinet division, near Baviaan's River.
1816	Five boers hanged for rebellion at Van Aardt's Post, Great Fish River. Military post at Roodewal established.

A.D.	
1816	First establishment of Wesleyan missions in South Africa. Town of Worcester founded. The Knysna harbour entered by H.M.S. *Podargus*. The London missionary Williams establishes a station at the chief Gaika's kraal, near Fort Beaufort. 9,623 lbs. of wool exported from Cape Colony. Wesleyan mission in the Kamiesberg founded. Present court of justice built.
1817	Meeting and treaty between the governor, Lord C. Somerset, and Kafir chief Gaika—April 2. Mission station of Kuruman founded by Rev. R. Moffat—June 17. Leper institution of "Hemel en Aarde" founded.
1818	Foundation of Lutheran church laid. War between Kafir chief Gaika and the Tslambie tribe of Kafirs. Great battle between Gaika and Tslambies, on the Debe Flats; the former defeated, and flees to the mountains; the English government take the part of Gaika. Moravian mission station at Enon, in the Zuurberg, founded. Somerset Hospital founded —July 6. Creation of sub-drostdy of Beaufort West—November 27. Second journey of the missionary Campbell along the Orange River to Namaqualand, till 1820. Village founded at Hooge Vlakte, now town of Beaufort. Death of the missionary Williams at the Old School, near Fort Beaufort. The desolating wars of the Zulu king, Chaka, commence about this period. Great commando under Colonel Brereton enters Kafirland—Dec.
1819	Invasion of the colony by the Tslambie and Amagonubi Kafirs, who penetrate as far as Uitenhage—Feb. Proclamation of Lord C. Somerset, offering grants of land to settlers east of the Bosjeman's River—March 29. Attack on Graham's Town by the Kafirs, under the prophet Makanna, or Lynx, and Dushani, who are repulsed by the British forces under Colonel Wilshire—April 22. £50,000 granted by British legislature to send colonists to eastern frontier of Cape Colony—July. Commando under Colonel Wilshire scours Kafirland; Makanna surrenders himself—Aug. 15. Country between Keiskamma and Fish Rivers declared a neutral territory. Country between the Koonap, Kat, and Great Fish Rivers added to the colony. Foundation laid of Wesleyan chapel, Burg-street. Military posts first established at Fort Beaufort and Fort Wilshire. First stone of Commercial Exchange laid—Sept. 25. Treaty between Lord C. Somerset and Gaika chiefs—Oct. 15. Commissariat farm established on site of present town of Somerset East. The Hottentot robber Afrikander, converted to Christianity by the missionary Moffat, visits Cape Town. Makanna and the Hottentot chief D. Stuurman sent to Robben Island; the former perishes in trying to escape—Dec. 25. Post office revenue this year, £987 6s 4d.
1820	British settlers arrive in Algoa Bay—April 20. Fair established at Beaufort West for the benefit of the tribes north of Orange River. T. Pringle, the poet, and party settle on the Baviaan's River, Glenlynden. Cholera at Mauritius: great alarm prevails in Cape Town, and vessels put into quarantine. Bathurst made seat of magistracy for Albany—Oct. 13. Division of Albany formed. Lord C. Somerset proceeds to England, leaving Sir R. Donkin as lieutenant-governor. Royal Observatory at Cape founded—Oct. 20. Town of Port Elizabeth founded by Sir R. Donkin; it consists of small temporary barrack, a few huts, besides the orginal farm-house of the boer Hartman—population, thirty-five souls.

A.D.	
1820	The Kafir chief Moselikatze flees before Chaka over the Drakensberg into the present Free State; he then attacks and exterminates several of the native Lehoya and other Betjouana tribes dwelling there, driving the Amauquani Zulus, under Matuana, and the Amatlubi Fingoes, under Pacarita, on the Basuto tribes. The Basuto chief Moshesh kills Pacarita and drives Matuana to the south, who afterwards attacks the Tambookies, and is conquered by the British forces under Major Dundas, in 1828.
1821	The Griquas separate into three distinct tribes, under the chiefs Adam Kok, Andreas Waterboer, and Barend Barends. Annual Kafir fair established at Fort Wilshire—July 26. Hope Lodge, freemasons, constituted. Marryatt's signals established on Lion's Rump and at Knysna; flag-staff previously on Lion's Head. Military village of Frederickburg founded; abandoned 1823. South African Public Library founded at Cape Town. Lord C. Somerset returns to the Cape. Military survey of frontier commenced and continued till 1825, under Lieutenants Pettingal and Rivers, R.E., Captain Bonamy, 6th regiment, Lieutenant Stretch, &c.
1822	Division of Tulbagh receives the name of Worcester. Establishment of Savings Bank. English language proclaimed to be used in all judicial proceedings, after 1827, in official acts, from 1825, and in all documents issued from colonial offices, in 1828. Mission station at Philippolis founded. A British agent, Mr. Melville, appointed to reside among the tribes north of the Orange River, at Griqua Town. Seat of magistracy for Albany restored to Graham's Town—Feb. 8. Tremendous floods and storms in the eastern part of colony; destroy the crops of Albany settlers—July. 200,000 rixdollars granted by Government on a loan—Aug. Kafir chief Macomo allowed by Lord C. Somerset to reoccupy a portion of the neutral territory, now the Kat River settlement. Continual depredations by Bushmen along the northern frontiers of the colony. Great storm in Table Bay; seven ships go ashore; sixty-nine houses and stores seriously injured—July 19 to 21.
1828	First Wesleyan mission in Kafirland founded at Wesleyville. Mantatees, flying before Moselikatze, attack Latakoo—June 21. They retreat to the north, under Sebituane, and settle about Linyanti and the Zambezi, where they are first visited by Dr. Livingstone in 1850. Mr. G. Thompson, traveller, visits Betjouanaland, and brings to the colony first news of Mantatee invasion. Annual fair established at Slingersfontein, in the Hantam. Great confusion existing amongst the Betjouana tribes north of the Orange River, owing to the wars between Moselikatze, Chaka, and other native chiefs. Proclamation for regulation of medical practitioners—Sept. Major, the present General, Somerset attacks Macomo's kraals, and captures 7,000 head of cattle—Dec. 5.
1824	The first number of *South African Commercial Advertiser*, the first Cape newspaper, published by G. Greig—Jan. 7. Population of Cape Colony, 48,699 whites, 1,989 free blacks, 1,770 negro apprentices, and 23,198 slaves; total, 85,656. Lieut. Farewell, King, and party settle at Natal. Lighthouse erected on Green Point first lighted—April 12. Moravian mission of Elim established. *South African Journal*, the first literary journal in South Africa, published under the joint editorship of T. Pringle and J. Fairbairn.

A.D.	
1824	The Basuto chief Moshesh fixes his residence at Thaba Bosigo. Mr. G. Thompson penetrates north from the Hantam to the Orange River, and explores part of its course. Great visitation of locusts. Kafir fairs to be held at Fort Wilshire three times a week. Naval buildings at Knysna destroyed by fire—Nov. 13. The Bastard chief Africaner commences his inroads on Damara the tribes.
1825	The South African Literary Society suppressed by Lord C. Somerset. Commission of inquiry into grievances of Albany settlers make their report—May 25. Divisions of Somerset and Cradock formed. The Korannas and Bergenaars, vagrant Hottentot tribes living along the Orange River, under Conrad Buys and other outlawed boers, attack the Basutos. Attack by a commando under Colonel Somerset on Botman's kraal. Conspiracy of slaves in Bokkeveld, and murder of Van der Merwe. First museum established—June 10. Corner-stone of observatory laid—Aug. 13. Town of Somerset founded.
1826	Sir R. Bourke lieutenant-governor—February. Lord C. Somerset leaves the colony—May 5. A. G. Bain and Biddulph, travellers, penetrate north nearly to Kolobeng. 4,192 lbs. of sheep's wool exported from Cape. Wesleyan mission station at Mount Coke, Kafirland, established.
1827	About this year the Bushmen of the Nieuweveldt retire to the desert country near the Orange River. *South African Commercial Advertiser* stopped by an order of the Governor—March 10; re-established 1828. Expedition of Cowan and Green, travellers; they reach Delagoa Bay from the colony; both travellers perish there of fever—April 1829. Great fight between the Tambookies, and Fetcani under Matuana, near the mountain Hangklip, in present division of Queen's Town—Aug. 27. Bishop of Calcutta, first Protestant prelate who ever visited the Cape, consecrates English burial-ground—Oct. 13. Royal charter for appointment of judges—Dec. 10. Ordinance dissolving burgher senate—December 26.
1828	Foundation of St. Andrew's (Scotch) church, Somerset-road—May 28. Fifteenth ordinance passed, putting all free persons of colour on same footing as Europeans—July 17. Expedition of Major Dundas along the coast of Kafirland. The Fetcani under Matuana, attack the Tambookies and Amagaleka Kafirs, and are defeated near the sources of the Bashee by a colonial force, under Major Dundas—Aug. 26. Sir Lowry Cole appointed governor of Cape—Sept. 14. The Zulu tyrant Chaka killed by Dingaan—Sept. 23. Messenger from Gaika arrives in Cape Town—Nov. 5. Shiloh mission station founded. A. Stockenstrom appointed commissioner-general of eastern frontier.
1829	Death of Kafir chief Gaika. Travels of Schoon and McLuckie, and of Missionary Archbell, into the interior. They penetrate into the country now the Transvaal Republic. Circulating library of South African Library established—March 20. Foundation of Rhenish mission in Cape colony. Macomo and his tribe ejected from the Kat River. Kat River settlement founded by Sir L. Cole. South African College opened—Oct. 1. Name of village of Zwartland changed to Malmesbury. Moselikatze visited at his residence in the Magaliesberg, by the missionaries Moffat and Archbell.
1830	4,500 lbs. of wool exported this year from Port Elizabeth. Roman Catholic relief ordinance issued—Jan. 13. Great fire amongst the woods at Wynberg. Horse sickness—March 11.

A.D.	
1830	Foundation-stone of St. George's church laid by His Excellency Sir L. Cole, and old name of Bergh-street changed to St. George's-street—March 23. Great fire on Table Mountain—May. New organ presented to Dutch Reformed church by Jan Hoets; cost £1,500. Wreck of the *L'Eole*, French ship, near mouth of Bashee. Basutos under Moshesh attack and exterminate a Griqua commando under Hendrik Hendricks, near Thaba Bosigo; the latter alone escapes. Total exports of wool from the colony, 33,280 lbs.; post office revenue £3,752. Commando under Colonel Somerset enters Kafirland. Chief Seko killed—June. Two large masses of rock fall from Table Mountain—June 6. *Lady Holland*, East Indiaman, wrecked on Dassen Island. London mission station in Kat River settlement founded. Village of Colesberg founded. French missiooaries first arrive in South Africa. Establishment of Rhenish mission in South Africa, at Stellenbosch and Wupperthal. Sir Lowry's Pass, in Hottentots' Holland mountains, opened—July 6. Attack of Griquas on Moselikatze, near Mosega, and their defeat.
1831	New Wesleyan chapel, Cape Town, opened—Feb. 13. The Rev. S. Kay travels in Kafirland. Death of Lord C. Somerset at Brighton—Feb. 20. Houw Hoek Pass opened—April 13. St. George's-street lighted by subscription—April 23. The learned Brahmin Rammohin Roy visits Cape Town—Nov. 17. Savings Bank opened—Dec. Great alarm amongst the frontier boers, caused by report that the Kat River Hottentots were about to attack them—Dec. 2. South African Fire and Life Assurance Company established. Moselikatze drives the Baharutsi from Mosega, and establishes his kraal there. *Graham's Town Journal* established—Dec. 30.
1832	Rhenish mission station of Ebenezer established. Vice-Admiralty court appointed at the Cape. Foundation-stone of present institution "Tot Nut van 't Algemeen" laid—Oct. 3.
1833	The chief Tyali driven out of the Mancazana valley, and settled on the Chumie, near the site of present town of Alice. First establishment of French missions among the Basutos under Casalis, Arbousset, and Gosselin. German mission stations founded at Natal. The appointment of Commissioner-General of eastern frontier abolished. Orphan Chamber abolished; duties to be performed by Master of Supreme Court. Commando from the Hantam under Field-Commandant Redelinghuys, against the marauding Korannas, near the Orange River—Sept. 7.
1834	Sir B. D'Urban appointed governor of Cape. Sir J. Herschel arrives at Cape—Jan. 17. Berlin mission station at Bethany founded. Dr. A. Smith and exploring party leave Cape Town—July. South African Association for Administration of Estates established. Captain Gardiner sets out on his travels in Zulu country—Dec. Slavery abolished in Cape—Dec. 1. Slaves to be apprenticed for four years. Kafir chief Xo-Xo wounded by patrol—Dec. 10. Moshesh attacks the Tambookie Kafirs near Shiloh. Treaty between Sir B. D'Urban and chief A. Waterboer—Dec. 11. Outbreak of fourth Kafir war, and invasion of the colony by the Gaika and Tslambie tribes—Dec. 23. In one week 40 farmers murdered, 450 farm-houses burnt, 4,000 horses, 100,000 head of cattle, and 150,000 sheep carried off.

A.D.	
1835	Kafirs overrun the eastern frontier. Sir H. Smith, then Colonel Smith, arrives in Graham's Town in six days overland from Cape Town—Jan. 7. Fort Wilshire evacuated by British troops, and burnt by Kafirs. Kafir Drift post abandoned and hurnt. Captain Gardiner visits Dingaan's kraal—Feb. 10. Amakosa Kafirs attack Morosi, a Basuto chief, near Orange River. Death of the Kafir chief Hintza, killed by Mr. R. Southey in attempting to escape from his escort—May 21. Fingoes released from slavery and hrought into colony. Despatch received from Dr. A. Smith and exploring party, announcing their arrival at Moselikatze's kraal—June 10. Great commando under Colonel Smith sweeps Kafirland; he establishes his head-quarters at King William's Town. Sbock of earthquake—Sept. 9. Mission station of Nisbet Bath destroyed by Africander; re-occupied by Wesleyan missionaries. Treaty of peace with Kafir chiefs signed, by which chiefs and people agree to become subjects of Great Britain. Great hurricane at Stellenhosch—Sept. 30. Shock of earthquake at Cape—Nov. 11. Province of Queen Adelaide, including present British Kaffraria and division of Victoria East, formed. Frontier of colony to he the Great Kei River. Date of famous despatch from Lord Glenelg to Sir B. D'Urban, disavowing his measures—Dec. 26.
1836	Clanwilliam declared a separate division. Shipwreck of *Doncaster* on Cape Agulhas—July 23. Sir A. Stockenstrom appointed lieutenant-governor—July 28. Emigration of Dutch boers under P. Retief commences. First party under Treichardt sets off; reaches Delagoa Bay, 1838. First attack of Moselikatze on emigrant hoers, near Coque's Drift, Vaal River—Aug. 1. Ordinance establishing municipal hoards in towns and villages of colony—Aug. 15. Second attack of Moselikatze on emigrant hoers, near Vet River—Oct. 2. Shock of earthquake felt in Piketberg—Dec. 4. Military post at Fort Armstrong huilt. Drostdy-house at Graham's Town converted into military harracks. Military post estahlished at Fort Peddie. Reversal of D'Urhan policy; province of Queen Adelaide given hack to Kafirs, and also greater part of neutral territory; houndary to be the great Fish River, Tarka, and Stormberg Spruit to the Orange River—Dec. 5. Old Dutch Reformed church pulled down, Captain Harris sets out on his expedition north of Vaal River. 373,203 lbs. of wool exported from colony.
1837	Districts of Cradock and Colesberg erected into separate and independent divisions—Feb. 8. Mosega, Moselikatze's residence, attacked by the emigrant boers, who destroy it. Last attack of emigrant boers, on Moselikatze—Dec.; he flies to the north, and takes refuge in the country north of Malappo mountains, in lat. 20°. Colonel Lewis, R.E., makes his report on frontier line of defence. Sir J. Alexander travels from the Cape northward, and reaches the country of the Damaras. Legislative council formed. Cape of Good Hope Bank estahlished.
1838	Sir G. Napier appointed governor—Jan. 22. Authority granted for commencing new frontier line of defence from the Tarka post to the sea, as proposed by Colonel Lewis, R.E. Backhouse, traveller, lands in Cape—Jan. 27. Pieter Retief, chief of the emigrant boers, with his followers, murdered by the Zulu king Dingaan, at his kraal—Feb. 4. Defeat of the emigrant hoers under Uys and Potgieter by the Zulus, near Bloed River, a branch of the Utugela—April.

A.D.	
1838	Post at Mancazana built; burnt by Kafirs in 1846. Prince of Orange at Cape—May 8. Village of Wellington founded. *Northumberland*, East Indiaman, lost off Cape Agulhas—Aug. 25. Large aerolites fell near Patatasfontein, Great Karroo—Oct. 13. Major Cbartres' expedition to Natal—Nov. 14; leaves a garrison of 72nd regiment tbere. Queen's road from Graham's Town to Fort Beaufort opened. New military post at Fort Brown, formerly Hermanus Kraal, commenced. Slavery at Cape finally abolisbed—Dec. 1. Great battle between tbe emigrant boers under Pretorius, and Dingaan, near Umkinglove; Dingaan defeated, and flies to the mountains—Dec. 16. South African Bank, Cape of Good Hope Marine Assurance and Protecteur Assurance Companies, and Board of Executors established. Eastern Province Bank established.
1839	English church at Wynberg built. Cape Town and Green Point municipality formed—Feb. 12. Dr. Innes appointed first Superintendent-General of Education—May 23. Ordinance for the creation of a municipal board for Cape Town and its vicinity. Sir A. Stockenstrom ceases to be lieutenant-governor; succeeded by Colonel J. Hare—Aug. 22. Military post at Double Drift commenced; abandoned in 1848. Main barracks and martello Tower at Fort Beaufort built. Military post at Eland's River, near Seymour, built. Eastern Province Fire Insurance Company established. New system of police introduced. New military hospital, Cape Town, commenced.
1840	The steamer *Good Hope*, the first coasting steamer running on the Cape coast, lost on the Zitzekamma coast—Feb. Panda, by assistance of emigrant boers, defeats his brotber Dingaan, and is proclaimed by tbem paramount chief of the Zulus—Feb. 14. Dingaan flees towards Delagoa Bay, wbere he is murdered. Fort Brown bridge over Great Fish River commenced; completed 1848. Bridge over Kat River, at Fort Beaufort, commenced; completed 1843. Commencement of measurement of arc of meridian by Mr. Maclear—Sept. 2. A large rbinoceros killed near Cometjies Post. A lion killed near cbief Stock's kraal. Foundation of Roman Catholic cathedral, Roeland-street, laid; cost £12,148—Oct. 6 British garrison withdrawn from Natal. Proclamation of Pretorius declaring Natal the property of the South African Volksraad. Attack by tbe Natal emigrant boers on the Amabaxa Kafirs under Napier: 3,000 head of cattle, 250 sheep, and 17 little boys and girls captured—Dec.
1841	New system of education, recommended by Sir J. Herschel, introduced. Tower at Fort Peddie built. Military post formed at the Umgazi, to protect the chief Faku. 1,016,807 lbs. wool exported from colony. Foundation of Roman catholic churcb, Grabam's Town, laid. Sheep-farming on the increase on eastern frontier.
1842	Expedition under Captain Smith leaves the Umgazi for Natal, overland—Jan. Death of tbe Kafir cbief Tyali, and disturbances in Kafirland relative to queen Sutu—May. Public library opened in Grabam's Town—May. British force arrives at Natal—May 3. Fearful murder case in Graaff-Reinet; Jacob Rabie killed by his wife and ber paramour, Liebenberg: they are executed—May 14. Night attack of Britisb force on boers' camp and their repulse—May 23. British force besieged by emigrant boers.

A.D.	
1842	Relief of British camp by 25th regiment, under Colonel Cloete—June 24. Submission of Natal boers to British government—July 5. The *Arion*, *Galatea*, and *Speedy* lost in a north-west gale in Table Bay—July 13. Spanish ship *Sabina* wrecked on Cape Recif, 21 souls lost—Aug. 10. Military post at Trompetter's Drift built. Cavalry barracks at Fort Peddie built. Convict ship *Waterloo*, and troop ship *Abercrombie Robertson* wrecked in Table Bay; 194 lives lost—Aug. 28. Violent north-west gale in Table Bay; five vessels go ashore—Sept. 10. Mr. Montagu appointed colonial secretary—Sept. 28. Judge Menzies being on circuit, at Colesberg, crosses the Orange River and proclaims the country, to 25° south latitude, British territory—Oct. 22. The emigrant boers under Pretorius prepare to attack the Griquas. Expedition under Col. Hare proceeds to Colesberg, and arrives on the 31st Dec. The boers retire, and a garrison of 300 men remain at Colesberg. Conference between Adam Kok and Colonel Hare.
1843	Visitation of locusts all over the colony, even near Cape Town where they had not been for ninety years. Comet appears—March 2. Wreck of *Conservative* on Foundling Rock—March 15. Quarrel between Kafir chiefs Gazella and Umhala—May. Commando enters Kafirland to punish the recusant chief Tola—June. Murder of the farmers Palmer and Brown by Kafirs, near Bathurst. First mail coach runs between Cape Town and Swellendam—Sept. Treaty between Sir G. Napier and Basuto chief Moshesh—Oct. 5. Military post at Cometjies Drift built; burnt in 1847. Villages of Richmond and Riversdale founded. Bill passed Legislative Council for improving roads of colony—Nov. 22; and late Road Board formed. First discovery of Ichaboe and other guano islands, on west coast—Dec. Sir P. Maitland appointed governor—Dec. 19. Gordon Cumming's hunting expedition in the interior.
1844	Slight shock of an earthquake at Cape—Feb. 26. Convicts removed from Robben Island and employed in construction of roads. Cape Gas Company, Colonial Bank, and Equitable Fire Insurance Company instituted. Abolition of port dues in colonial ports. Discovery of a large guano deposit on Malagas Island, Saldanha Bay. Rogge Bay battery granted to the municipality. Theatre in Hottentot-square converted into a chapel for coloured races. Trinity church commenced. Issue of letters patent annexing Natal to Cape Colony—March 31. Completion of large tunnel for irrigation at Hankey mission station—April. Military posts at Botha Post and Post Retief built. General uneasiness amongst Kafir tribes. Dutch farmer De Lange shot by Kafir marauders. Montagu bridge opened, and hard road over flats commenced—July 1. Public offices in town of George destroyed by fire—July 30. His Excellency Sir P. Maitland visits frontier; meeting with Congo chiefs at Fort Peddie—Sept. 19. Conference at Fort Beaufort with Dutch farmers—Sept. 30. Post Victoria founded in neutral territory.
1845	Emigrant boers having attacked the Griquas, a military force is sent to their assistance, under the command of Colonel Richardson, 7th Dragoon Guards, who defeats the boers at Zwartkopjies, north of Orange River, after which they surrender and give up their arms—Apr. 29. Natal made a distinct colony—April 30.

A.D.	
1845	Sir P. Maitland makes treaties with Tslambie and Gaika chiefs, Tambookies, and Griquas, which abrogate the Stockenstrom treaties. Foundation-stone of gas works laid—Oct. 8. Major Warden appointed British Resident in the country north of the Orange River. Opening of hard road over Cape Flats—Dec. 24. Cape of Good Hope Mutual Life Assurauce Society founded. Martin West, Esq., first lieut.-governor of Natal.
1846	War party in Kafirland gets predominant. A military post being about to be instituted at Block Drift, Kafirs show much uneasiness. Great meeting at Block Drift between Kafir chiefs and His Honour Colonel Hare—Jan. 29; upwards of 5,000 armed Kafirs present. One of Tola's Kafirs steals an axe from a shop in Fort Beaufort; he is sent to the prison in Graham's Town, but is rescued on the way near Dans Hoogte, and the prisoner he is tied to is killed in the scuffle. Tola refuses to surrender the escaped man. Sir P. Maitland proceeds to the frontier. Proclamation declaring war against Kafirs. Kafir chief Macomo wishes to remain a prisoner, but is forcibly turned out of Fort Beaufort. Troops from Fort Beaufort take the field—April 11. British forces attacked by the Kafirs at Burns' Hill, in the Amatola—April 15; and sixty-three wagons captured by the enemy. Post Victoria abandoned and burnt. Martial law proclaimed—April 22. Forty-one wagons captured by the enemy near Trumpeter's Drift—May 21. Fort Peddie attacked by the Kafirs under Umhala, Seyolo, and Pato—May 27. Battle of the Gwanga, and defeat of the Kafirs by General Somerset—June 7. General attack on the Amatola strongholds—July. Military post at Fort Hare established, and town of Alice founded. Commando into Kreli's country under Sir Andries Stockenstrom and Lieut.-Colonel Johnstone—Aug. 21. Sir P. Maitland advances towards the Great Kei River, and suffers much from want of supplies. Country suffers much from drought. Supplies commenced to be landed at Waterloo Bay. Macomo surrenders himself—Nov. 25. Sandilli surrenders. Chief Pato holds out in the difficult country near the Kei. Colonel Hare retires from the lieutenant-governorship of the eastern frontier. Port Elizabeth Bank fouuded.
1847	His Excelleucy Sir H. Pottinger appointed governor of colony—Jan. 27. Cape Town lighted with gas—March 5. Frontier Commercial and Agricultural Bank founded. Union Bank founded. Sir H. Young, lieutenant-governor of frontier—April 28. Renewal of hostilities with Kafirs, and failure of an expedition to seize Sandilli—Oct. Hard road over Cape Flats completed; cost £43,022—Oct. 30. Establishment of military villages. King William's Town re-established, and declared head-quarters of British Kaffraria. New line of military posts in British Kaffraria. Port of East London established—Dec. Sir H. Smith governor of colony—Dec. 1; he lands at Port Elizabeth—Dec. 14, and has an interview with Macomo, and proceeds to King William's Town. Proclamations defining the colonial boundary, and forming province of British Kaffraria and division of Victoria East—Dec. 23 and 28. Meeting of Sir H. Smith and Kafir chiefs at King William's Town—Dec. 23.
1848	Great meeting of Sir H. Smith and Kafir chiefs at King William's Town—Jan. 7. Foundation-stone of lighthouse on Cape Agulbas laid—Jan. 8. Division of Albert formed.

A.D.

1848 Opening of Montagu, formerly Cradock Pass—Jan. 18; cost £35,709. Sir H. Smith travels overland to Natal *viâ* Colesberg; meets Moshesh at Winburg—Jan. 27; reaches Pietermaritzburg—Feb. 9; embarks for East London, and arrives in Cape Town, *via* Graham's Town—March 1. Proclamation of Sir H. Smith, declaring Queen's supremacy over country north of Orange River—Feb. 3. Fearful floods on the frontier; stone bridge at Fort Beaufort seriously injured—Feb. 7. Bishop Gray, first bishop of Cape Town, arrives—Feb. 20. Botanic Gardens founded—May 2. Postage reduced to an uniform rate. Village of Smithfield founded. Stamp duty on newspapers abolished—June 27. Completion of measurement of arc of meridian by Mr. Maclear. Formation of Fort Beaufort into a separate division. A. Pretorius persuades Dutch emigrant boers to resist British supremacy in the country north of Orange River. Major Warden resident. Proclamation offering £1,000 for apprehension of Pretorius—Aug. 27. Sir H. Smith passes Orange River to attack boers. Battle of Boomplaats—Aug. 30. Boers defeated and submit. Pretorius and his followers cross the Vaal River, and found Transvaal Republic. Bloemfontein made seat of British resident. Order in Council issued authorizing Secretary of State to send convicts to certain colonies. Opening of Mitchell's Pass, formerly Mostert's Hoek—Dec. 1. Proclamation allowing public meetings to take place without sanction of chief local magistrate—Dec. 12. Lighthouse on Cape Agulhas completed.

1849 Lighthouse on Cape Agulhas lighted—March 1. Part of old prison pulled down—April 3. Great anti-convict meeting in Cape Town—May 20. Dr. Livingstone starts from Kolobeng with Messrs. Oswell and Murray in June, in search of Lake Ngami (reaches it, August 1). Synkonyella, Mantatee chief, attacks Moshesh and Molitzani—July 24. During last three years, 2,959 emigrants arrive in the Cape colony at public expense. Equitable Marine Assurance Company established. Letters patent of Her Majesty arrive in colony, granting constitution—Aug. 21. Anti-convict agitation. Ship *Neptune*, with convicts, arrives in Simon's Bay; convicts not allowed to land—Sept. 19. Four members of Legislative Council—Messrs. Brand, Reitz, Stockenstrom, and Fairbairn—resign, in consequence of a resolution to proceed to other business before considering Constitution Ordinance—Sept 21.

1850 Order in Council published, revoking that making the Cape a penal settlement—Feb. 13. Anti-convict association formally dissolved—Feb. 14. *Neptune*, convict ship, sails from Simon's Bay—Feb. 20. Dr. Livingstone sets out on his second journey to Lake Ngami, and discovers the Leambye, or Zambezi River—April. Dr. G. Atherstone fixes longitude of Graham's Town—April 17. Public meeting and petition to Queen for representative government—April 23. Considerable excitement prevails in Kafirland through the prophecies of the impostor Umlangeni. Government notice of appointment of new Legislative Council to consider new constitution of Cape—May 6. Shock of earthquake in Graham's Town—May 21. Galton and Andersson, travellers, arrive in the Cape, on their way to Damara and Ovampoland—June 23. Major Warden, assisted by Synkonyella, attacks Molitsani, who takes refuge in Moshesh's country, and it is determined to demand satisfaction of Moshesh—Sept. 18.

A.D.	
1850	Sir H. Smith proceeds to the frontier—October. Meeting of Kafir chiefs—Oct. 26. Sandilli refuses to appear, and is deposed. Sir Harry Smith moves forward to Fort Cox—Dec. 14. Armed patrol proceeds in search of Sandilli—Dec. 24; and is attacked by Kafirs, and suffers severe loss. Military villages burnt and settlers massacred by Kafirs—Dec. 25. Queen Sutu appointed regent of Gaika tribes. £500 reward offered for Sandilli—Dec. 26. Kafir police begin to desert—Dec. 28. Sir H. Smith shut up in Fort Cox; an attempt to relieve by Colonel Somerset fails—Dec. 29. Sir H. Smith succeeds in leaving Fort Cox, and reaches King William's Town—Dec. 31. Disaffection amongst the Hottentots at Kat River. Name of Heerengracht changed to Adderley-street.
1851	Attack of Kafirs on Fort White—Jan. 3. Attack of the Kafir chief Hermanus on Fort Beaufort—Jan. 7; he is killed, and attack repulsed. Mail steamer *Bosphorus*, first of postal line, arrives in Table Bay—Jan. 26. Rebellion of the Kat River Hottentots. Desertion of seventy soldiers of Cape Mounted Rifles to the enemy. Fort Armstrong attacked and destroyed by General Somerset, who breaks up Kat River settlement—Feb. 22. Shiloh Hottentots proclaimed rebels. Chief Pato remains faithful. Hostilities with Tambookies under Mapassa. Mission of Sir A. Stockenstrom and Mr. Fairbairn to England—March 23. Destruction of mission station of Shiloh. Lighthouse on Cape Recif lighted—April 1. Great fire in woods near Newlands—April 7; several houses burnt. Captain Tylden defeats a large force of Tambookies near the Imvani—April 15. Kafirs enter colony and overrun the frontier divisions—June. Commission appointed to inquire into Kat River rebellion—June 3. Most extraordinary and interesting confession of a Kafir murderer, Kwaxena, to Mr. Fynn, British resident at Palmerston—June 18 (*vide Commercial Advertiser*, Aug. 2). Hottentots of Graham's Town disarmed and their huts burned—June 29. Major Warden and native commando attacks Molitsani, and is defeated—June 30. Kafirs occupy the Waterkloof and forest country near Fort Beaufort—July. Major Warden, Britisb resident at Bloemfontein, proclaims Moshesh and Molitsani as enemies—August 5. Death of Dr. Philip, L.M.S. Attack on 2nd Regiment, near Double Drift, by Kafirs; two officers four non-commissioned officers, and seventeen men killed. Attack on Kafirs at Waterkloof—Oct. 16. Hottentot levy disarmed at Alice—Oct. 22. Commissioners Hogge and Owen proceed to Orange River Sovereignty. Attack on Kafirs in Waterkloof; death of Colonel Fordyce, 74th Regiment—Nov. 6. Ordinance for constituting a parliament for the Cape colony promulgated—Nov. 26. Affairs between Basutos and government of Sovereignty in a very unsatisfactory state. Commissioners arrive at Bloemfontein—Dec. 27.
1852	Traveller Galton embarks at Walvisch Bay for England—Jan. 6. Convention between Messrs. Hogge and Owen and Transvaal boers, acknowledging their independence—Jan. 15. Great fire at Newlands—Jan 23. Total loss of H.M.S. *Birkenhead*, near Danger Point, 9 officers and 349 men perish—Feb. 26. Martin's church opened—March 16. General Cathcart arrives as governor—March 31. Sir H. Smith leaves colony—April 17. Death of Rev. J. Read—May 8.

A.D.	
1852	Proclamation declaring that the governor was about to proceed to Orange River territory, to settle matters there. Dr. Livingstone, having returned to the Cape from his second journey, sets out on his third journey—April; and finally reaches St. Paul de Loando—May 20, 1856. Death of Major Hogge—June 7. Proclamation of the governor against Kreli—July 1. Grand attack on Waterkloof—July 6 to 8. Livingstone sets out on his second journey, from Kuruman, on 20th Nov., and reaches Linyanti on 23rd May 1853. Commandant Schutte orders the Missionaries Inglis and Edwards to leave their stations at Mosiga and Malotza, in the Transvaal territory—Nov. 28. Boers attack mission station of Kolobeng and destroy it. His Excellency Sir G. Cathcart arrives at Platberg, and demands from chief Moshesh 10,000 head of cattle and 1,000 horses, withiu three days—Dec. 13, as compensation for robberies committed by his people in the Sovereignty. Interview between Sir G. Carthcart and Moshesh—Dec. 15. Moshesh not having complied with the demands made on him, is attacked by the British forces. Battle of Berea—Dec. 20. Moshesh sues for peace—Dec 21.
1853	Proclamation of peace with chief Kreli—Feb. 14. Foundation-stone of St. John's church, Rogge Bay, laid—Feb. 24. Date of proclamation extending the royal mercy and pardon to the chief Sandilli and the Gaika people—March 2. Martial law revoked—March 23. Date of proclamation to inquire into the participation of the Hottentot community in late Kat River rebellion—March 25. New village of Robertson formed—May 4. Date of Governor Cathcart's famous minute on his measures to restore and preserve peace on the frontier. District of Queen's Town formed—May 20. Sir G. Clerk leaves Cape Town for the Sovereignty—June 10. Death of Commandant-general A. Pretorius, president of the Transvaal republic—July 23. C. J. Andersson reaches Lake Ngami from the west coast, Walvisch Bay—July 27. Death of Umlangeni, the Kafir prophet—Sept. 4. Opening of Wellington Bridge and Bain's Kloof—Sept. 13. Death of Mr. Montagu, colonial secretary, in London; last colonial rhinoceros shot near Grass Ridge—Nov. 4.
1854	Commencement of copper mining excitement in Cape Town. Cape of Good Hope Mining Company formed. South African Mining Company resuscitated—Jan. Death of Bishop Devereux. Immense excitement in mining speculations—Feb. 11. Orange River Sovereignty given up by the British government, and provisional government of present Free State proclaimed—Feb. 23. General Jackson arrives—March 1. Cape Commercial Bank formed—March 17. Date of Sir G. Clerk's notice publishing order of Queen in Council, renouncing authority over Orange River territory—April 8. General Sir G. Cathcart resigns the command of Her Majesty's forces in the colony to General Jackson—April 15. Cape Commercial Bank commences business—May 10. J. Hoffman appointed president of Free State—May 15. Sir G. Cathcart leaves for England—May 26. Mr. R. W. Rawson appointed colonial secretary—May 27. Death of Sir P. Maitland, formerly governor of Cape—May 30. Openiug of first Cape parliament—July 1. North-west gale in Table Bay; *Canopus*, *Wild Seamew*, and *Seagull* stranded—July 15.

A.D.	
1.54	First printing by steam at Cape Town, Cape of Good Hope—Aug. 10. Wreck of troop-ship *Charlotte*, in Algoa Bay; 97 lives lost—Sept 20. First establishment of Church of England mission leaves King William's Town for Umhala's kraal —Oct 13. Battle of Inkerman and death of Sir G. Cathcart—Nov. 5. Arrival of His Excellency Sir G. Grey, as governor of this colony—Dec. 5. Departure of Lieutenant-Governor Darling —Dec. 12. Name of Keizersgracht changed to Darling-street.
1855	A small smack of fifteen tons, the *Mystery*, arrives in Simon's Bay, on its way to Australia, which it safely reaches. Commercial Marine Insurance Company established—Jan. 26. Second session of colonial parliament opened by Sir G. Grey —March 13. Foundation-stone of Albany hospital laid by General Jackson—May 16. The traveller F. Green starts from Lake Ngami, and penetrates to the north-west as far as Lebebe. Boshof declared president of Free State—June 10. Trustees of South African Museum elected—July 7. Foundation-stone of St. Andrew's church, Graham's Town, laid—Aug. 15. Foundation-stone of new prison laid—Sept. 24. Village of Heidelburg founded—Nov. 22. Cape Royal Rifle Corps formed —Nov. 28. Village of Murraysburg formed—December 5. Great fire at Protea—Dec. 14. Illumination in Cape Town for fall of Sebastopol—Dec. 19.
1856	Extraordinary heavy falls of rain on the Stormberg mountains, near Burghersdorp, causing the death of 100,000 sheep—Feb. 13. Death of Sir H. Pottinger, formerly governor of the colony, at Malta—March 18. Murray's bequest of £5,000 to the South African College becomes available—April 8. Destructive fire at Rondebosch; several houses burnt; Cape insurance offices suffer losses of nearly £15,000—April 22. Tragedy of Leo Cox in Free State, his wife and children being found murdered—April 26; he is tried and executed for same on Nov. 1. Death of Bishop Armstrong, of Graham's Town —May 16. Murder of Rev. Mr. Thomas, of Beechamwood, by the Amapondas, in an attack on that station. Dr. Livingstone arrives at Quillimane on his return journey—June 13. Consecration of English church at the Paarl by Bishop of Cape Town—June 15. Severe north-west gale in Table Bay; several ships go ashore—Aug. 6. Uneasiness amongst Kafir tribes, caused by prophecies of the impostor Umlakaza. Cattle-slaughtering commences. Captain Hoffman and Major Grant arrive to make preparations for settling of German Legion. Natal declared a separate colony—Aug. 24. Wreck of Dutch bark *Japan*, off Gunner's Quoin; all lives lost—Oct. 3. Letter announcing death of Swedish traveller Wahlberg, beyond Lake Ngami, by an enraged elephant—Dec. 6. First detachment of German Legion arrives in Table Bay—Dec. 29. Horse-sickness, and lung-sickness in oxen, prevail in many parts of the colony to an immense extent in 1854-5-6.
1857	Sanguinary battles fought in the Zulu country, between the followers of Ketchwya and his father, Panda, the Zulu king; 20,000 lives lost. Head-quarters of German Legion arrives in Table Bay, and proceeds thence to East London—Jan. 28. Opening of Lady Grey's bridge over the Berg River, at the Paarl—May 19. Village of Hamburg formed by the German settlers, near the mouth of the Kieskamma—May 27. Severe north-west gale in Table Bay; nine vessels, twenty cargo-boats, and seven small boats driven ashore.

A.D.

1857 Extensive floods at Simon's Town, which do great damage to private property—June 7 and 8. Another severe gale in Table Bay; two vessels stranded—June 14. Another severe gale in Table Bay; cutter *Fox*, three cargo and several small boats stranded. Severe weather all along the coast--July 20. Unprecedented fall of snow in the Eastern Province—July 26. First troops, the 89th Regiment, embark for India, in consequence of the news of the revolt there, followed at intervals by the Royal Artillery, 6th, 13th, 60th, 73rd, and 80th Regiments. The Cape Royal Rifles commence doing garrison duty—August 7. Shock of earthquake at Cape, eleven p.m.—August 14. Mysterious murder of Lucy Walker, in Bree-street, Cape Town. Light-houses for Cape Point and Simon's Town arrive in Simon's Bay —August 19. His Excellency the American ambassador Reid touches in the *Minnesota*, steamer, at Table Bay, on his way to China—Sept. 7. Admiral of the station, Sir F. Grey, arrives here in the *Trident*—Oct 16. Kafir chief Macomo sentenced to death at Fort Hare for murder. His sentence is commuted to twenty years' confinement; and he is eventually sent to Robben Island—Nov. 17. Progress of famine amongst Kafir nation and immense immigration into colony.

1858 Opening of road through Meiring's Poort. Kafir chiefs Macomo, Vadanna, Quesha, and Xayimpi sent to Robben Island—March 3. Foundation-stone of new library and museum laid —March 23. Basuto war; mission station at Beersheba burnt —March 24. Skirmish before Thaba Bosigo, and end of Basuto war. Foundation-stone of Independent church, Caledon-square, laid—April. Arrival of Dr. Livingstone and exploring expedition from England—April 21. Public dinner to Dr. Livingstone—April 28. The emigrant ship *Gipsy Bride* arrives in Table Bay—May 12. Terrible fire at Port Elizabeth—May 15. Up to this date 3,200 horses sent to India—June 24. Commission appointed to fix the unit of colonial land measure —June 25. Death of Mr. E. Gregory, lost on Table Mountain —June 27. New divisions of Murraysburg, Fraserburg, Humansdorp, and Robertson formed The Governor announces his intention of granting 200 farms in British Kaffraria—July 12. Board of Public Examiners created—July 26. News arrives from Mr. C. Andersson, the traveller, who had failed in reaching the Cunene River—Aug. 11. Small-pox breaks out in Cape Town—Aug. 23. Brilliant comet appears—Oct. 10. Treaty of peace between Free State and Basutos—Oct. 12. Foundation of town-hall, Port Elizabeth, laid—Oct. 18. Succession of fires in Cape Town—Nov. 19 to 23. Election for members of Legislative Council, second Cape Parliament —Nov. 25. Total wreck of the steamer *Madagascar*, near Beka River—Dec. 3. Old Road Board dissolved, and new road law comes into operation—Dec. 31. Kafir Chief Tola killed by a party of frontier police. Gradual breaking up of power of Kafir chiefs, and dispersion of tribes. Kafir Chief Pato convicted of horse-stealing; now a resident in Somerset Hospital, and blind.

1859 Lake Shirwa discovered by Dr. Livingstone, early this year; and, somewhat later, Lake Nyassa. First sod of Cape Town and Wellington railway turned by Governor Sir G. Grey—Mar. 31. Mr. Wm. Murray, civil commissioner of Victoria West, together with Field-cornet Hendriks, murdered while on duty near the Orange River by a Kafir squatter—April 1.

A.D.	
1859	First item of colonial debt incurred—July 1. Foundation laid of patent slip at Simon's Bay—July 14. East London made a port of British Kaffraria—Aug. 1. Corner-stone of new Somerset Hospital laid by Gov. Sir G. Grey—Aug. 18. Gov. Sir G. Grey, being recalled, returns to England; and a petition, with 2,272 signatures, for his reappointment, leaves by the same mail—Aug. 21. General fast, on account of the drought—Oct. 5. The Dutch Reformed Church vestry resolve to allow their clergy to hold an English service at their church—Oct. 24. Theological Seminary of Dutch Reformed Church at Stellenbosch inaugurated—Nov. 15. Oidium appears in vines this month. New prison, Cape Town, occupied, —Dec. 3. Chief Justice Sir J. Wylde died—Dec. 13. Bishop of Cape Town issues a pastoral, enunciating the "voluntary principle."
1860	Supreme Court decides against the validity of Mohammedan so-called marriages—Feb. 22. New Independent church on Caledon-square opened—Mar. 11. Supreme Court decides that there is no fixed rate of interest in the Colony—Mar. 20. About this time a missionary party, on their way to the Makololo country, are stopped by Sekeletu at Linyanti; a mysterious mortality occurs among them, and the chief deprives them of much of their property. The new museum building opened—April 1. Telegraphic communication between Cape Town and Simon's Town commenced—Apr. 25. Educational Museum opened—May 22. Pillar letter-boxes first used in Cape Town—June 8. Sir G. Grey returns reinstated—July 4. News of knighthood conferred on Mr. T. Maclear, Astronomer Royal; Mr. W. Currie, Commandant of Armed Mounted Police; and Mr. C. J. Brand, Speaker, House of Assembly—July 11. Prince Alfred arrives on a visit to the Cape—July 24. Re-embarks on board the *Euryalus* for Port Elizabeth—Aug. 3. Lands there on his birthday. Simon's Town patent slip first used—Aug. 24. Water-police established at Cape Town—Sept. 1. Prince Alfred returns to Cape Town, after a tour through the Cape colony and Natal—Sept. 14. Grand fête and fancy fair at the Botanic Gardens in honour of him—Sept. 15. The Prince opens the Table Bay breakwater works—Sept. 17. Lays the foundation of the Sailors' Home, and inaugurates the new library and museum—Sept. 18. Departs in the *Euryalus* for England—Sept. 19. British Kaffraria declared an independent colony. Meteorological committee constituted—Oct. 30. Captain Adam Kok left Cape Town for Griqualand, having arranged with Gov. Sir G. Grey for the occupancy of Nomansland—Nov. 14. Public meeting at Cape Town in aid of the Oxford and Cambridge mission to Central Africa—Nov. 28.
1861	Bishop Mackenzie consecrated at the Cathedral, Cape Town, for Zambezi mission. Rev. W. Long suspended for three months for disobedience—Feb. 8. Parliamentary railway excursion—July 16. Sir G. Grey leaves the colony for the governorship of New Zealand—Aug. 15. Schooners *Shrimp* and *Elizabeth Mary* founder at their anchors, East London: all hands lost —Oct. 17.
1862	Telegraph between Port Elizabeth and Graham's Town completed —Jan. 2. Gov. Sir P. E. Wodehouse arrived—Jan. 15. Death of Bishop Mackenzie and Rev. Mr. Burrup—Jan. 31. Opening of the Wellington railway as far as Eerste Rivier—Feb. 12.

A.D.	
1862	Supreme Court decides the case of Bishop of Cape Town *vs.* Rev. W. Long in favour of the former—Feb. 15. The latter gives notice of appeal—Feb. 20. Public meetings held at Stellenbosch and Paarl, in opposition to the running of Sunday trains—March. Usury bill thrown out by the House of Assembly—May. Bark *Valleyfield* wrecked at Green Point light-house; captain, mate, and 7 men drowned—June 13. Municipal census of Cape Town makes the population 30,215. Right Rev. Dr. Griffith, Roman Catholic Bishop at Cape Town, died—June 18. Patent slip at Table Bay first used—July 17. An unusually tempestuous winter reached its height—Aug. 9: much damage among the shipping, among buildings and works on shore, especially the Wellington railway: inundations made great havoc among live-stock in the country; and occasioned much distress, especially at Kuils Rivier. First sod of Wynberg railway turned—Aug. 14. Severe storm in Table Bay. *Susan* and *Lucy Johnson* lost—Sept. 22. Steamer *Waldensian* wrecked at Struys Point; several wrecks on the coast—Oct. 13. Supreme Court decides that the Synod of the Dutch Reformed Church has been irregularly constituted since 1832: that the Free State, Natal, and Transvaal Churches have no connection with the Cape colony—Dec. 26. Lancashire relief fund at the Cape exceeds £3,000.
1863	Oratorio at Cape Town in aid of the Lancashire relief fund—Mar. 4. The library presented to the colony by Sir G. Grey arrives—April 11. Green Point tramway opened—May 1. Public holiday, with religious services, in honour of the marriage of the Prince of Wales—May 15. Confederate cruiser *Alabama* captures U. S. bark *Sea Bride* close to Table Bay—Aug. 3. U. S. steamer *Vanderbilt* arrives in Simon's Bay in search of Confederate cruisers, the last of which left the night before—Sept. 3. The Synod of the Dutch Reformed Church suspends the Rev. J. J. Kotzé for heresy—Oct. 20. Wellington railway opened throughout—Nov. 4. U. S. steamer *Vanderbilt* seizes the bark *Saxon* of Cape Town at Angra Pequina: one of the officers of the former murders Jas. Grey, mate of the latter: H.M.S. *Valorous* dispatched to ascertain particulars. Bishop of Cape Town pronounces sentence of deprivation against Bishop Colenso for heresy—Dec. 16 Confederate cruizer *Tuscalooza* seized in Simon's Bay for breach of neutrality in entering that port: to be detained till "properly claimed"—Dec. 26.
1864	Central African mission abandoned by Bishop Tozer about the beginning of this year. Communication opened with Graham's Town by electric telegraph—Jan. 8. Mr. J. H. Brand, of the Cape bar, being elected president of the Orange Free State, enters on his office—Feb. 1. Parliament opened at Graham's Town—Apr. 27; all import duties are raised 25 per cent., and other measures of taxation follow. Being invited by the Orange Free State and the Basuto Chief Moshesh to arbitrate the boundary question disputed between them, Governor Sir P. E. Wodehouse publishes his decision substantially in favour of the former—Oct 28. Wynberg railway permanently opened—Dec. 19.
1865	Census of the Colony—Mar. 5. Terrific gale in Table Bay; 17 ocean-going vessels wrecked, including mail steamer *Athens*—May 17. All souls on board the *Athens* and the *City of Peterborough* (29 and 18 respectively) drowned, and 14 other seamen and boatmen.

A.D.	
1864	A relief fund of £5,000 raised. Same day, a ruinous conflagration occurred at Swellendam, involving a loss of £40,000, the destruction of a considerable portion of the town, and great distress among the inhabitants. War proclaimed between the Free State and Moshesh, the Basuto chief—June 9. Parliament prorogued after a session of nearly 6 months—Oct. 10.

ADDENDA.

The following events were collected too late for insertion in their proper places.

1652	Hottentot chief Harry first showed the way up Table Mountain—Sept. 29.
1654	Day of fasting and prayer on account of the sufferings of the colonists from sickness—June 26.
1662	Commander Zacharias van Wagenaar arrives—April 2.
1680	Land-surveyor Wittebol ordered to draw a diagram of a piece of land for cultivation, to be named Stell-en-bos, and to be divided among certain of the people.
1686	A drilling-master appointed for the volunteers (Schutters) of Stellenbosch. Governor van der Stell inspects them (June 29), and is so well pleased that he gives the corps half a leaguer of wine to enjoy themselves.
1691	Claude Marais and Pierre Russouw first churchwardens at Stellenbosch.
1710	Landdrosts and heemraden are recommended to plant trees along all roads.
1738	A small rebellion under Etienne Barbier, at Drakenstein, suppressed; the leader crucified and decapitated, his head and hand fixed to a pale at Roodezand, now Tulbagh Kloof.
1747	Fast-day ordered by Governor Ryk van Tulbagh, the one eyed, on account of the scourge of locusts.
1750	Advice of landdrosts and heemraden desired on the increase of the population, and as to whether there were already too many people in the colony to earn a subsistence. Stellenbosch statistics: Population, 3,9 2; 14,000 cattle; 71,500 sheep; 136 pigs; 2,400,000 vines; 2,550 leaguers of wine; 1,300 muids of grain sown; 7,100 reaped.
1756	Meat, ¾d. a pound.
1769	The Eerste Rivier, by changes in its course, threatens to destroy Stellenbosch.
1787 } 1790 }	Many incursions and depredations by Bushmen in Stellenbosch.
1799	Commando dispatched under Johan Cloete from Stellenbosch to protect the northern farmers from the inroads of Africander and his band: squadron of dragoons to be stationed at Karroo Poort. First printing press established at the Cape. First permission to print given to Messrs. Walker and Robertson—July 21
1808	Slave insurrection in the Cape district suppressed; 9 rebels executed, 13 confined, and several sent back to their masters to work in irons. Robberies and excesses of all kinds were committed.

Statement of Loans raised by Debentures, under Guarantee of the Colonial Government.

Service.	Amount.	Interest payable at	Under Act of Colonial Parliament	Bearing Interest at six per cent. from	When redeemable or terminable.
	£				
Debt of the late Central Road Board	21,250	Colonial Treasury ...	No. 17 of 1858 ...	1859. July 1 ...	Debentures disposed of to Master of Supreme Court.
Immigration ...	50,000	Office of Crown Agents for Colonies	No. 22 of 1859 ...	1860. January 31	On 31st January 1870.
Ditto	25,000	Ditto	No. 9 of 1860 ...	1861. June 1 ...	On 1st June 1881.
Public Works ...	150,000	Ditto	No. 8 of 1860 ...	Various dates from	On 12th January 1891.
Roads and Bridges, Gaols, &c.	200,000	Ditto	No. 26 of 1861 ...	1861 Jan. 1, to 1861 Dec. 1 ...	In twelve years from date of issue.
Public Service ...	150,000	Ditto	No. 14 of 1863 ...	1863. October 16	On 15th April 1891.
Redemption of Debentures and repayment of temporary Loans	255,400	Ditto	No. 8 of 1864 ...	1864. Oct. 15 (5 per cent.) ...	On 31st December 1900.
Total ...	851,650				

N.B.—The Colonial Government is also liable:

I. Under Act No. 20 of 1857, "For the construction of a railway from Cape Town to Wellington," to guarantee interest on a sum not exceeding £500,000, for a term of fifty years, at the rate of 6 per cent., and to an amount not exceeding £30,000. For the half of this sum (£15,000), the Government holds a sub-guarantee on all landed property in the divisions concerned.

II. Under Act No. 21 of 1861, "For the construction and maintenance of a line of electric telegraph between Cape Town and Graham's Town," to pay an annual sum of £1,500 for fifteen years.

[IV—*continued.*]

STATEMENT of LOANS raised for PUBLIC WORKS under the MANAGEMENT of CORPORATE BODIES, the redemption of which has been guaranteed by the COLONIAL GOVERNMENT.

SERVICE.	Amount.	Interest payable at	Under Act of Colonial Parliament	Bearing Interest at six per cent. from	When redeemable or terminable.
	£				
Breakwater and Harbour Works, Table Bay	200,000	Office of Crown Agents for Colonies	No. 6 of 1860 ...	1860. October 15	£100,000 on 15th October 1880; £100,000 on 15th October 1890; interest to be paid, and capital to be refunded, out of wharfage dues.
Harbour, Kowie Mouth	12,500	Ditto	Ord. No. 4 of 1852	1862. February ...	February 1877.
	24,000		Act No. 18 of 1863	1860. October 15	On 15th October 1884.
	20,000		,, 23 of 1864	1864. October 15	On 31st December 1900.
	20,000		,, 8 of 1865	1865. October 15	
Harbour, Mossel Bay	6,500	Ditto	,, 7 of 1860	1862. January 10	On 10th January 1877.
	1,500	Ditto	,, 22 of 1863	1863. October 15	
Harbour, Port Elizabeth	20,500	Ditto, Col. Treas., and Port Elizabeth ...	,, 10 of 1858	No Return ...	In 5, 7, and 10 years from date of issue.
	29,500	Office of Crown Agents for Colonies	,, 17 of 1862	1862. October 15	On 15th February 1892.
Total ...	334,500				

[V]

Revenue and Expenditure of the Cape Colony from 1835 to 1865.

Year.	Revenue.	Expenditure.	Year.	Revenue.	Expenditure.
1835	£133,417	£134,576	1851	£234,884	£221,285
1836	158,697	147,579	1852	289,482	252,495
1837	167,037	145,816	1853	308,472	268,111
1838	188,459	168,508	1854	295,802	312,521
1839	174,845	192,688	1855	306,026	360,040
1840	171,205	181,653	1856	348,362	333,151
1841	179,590	172,422	1857	406,710	359,304
1842	226,261	226,025	1858	413,024	429,967
1843	221,721	250,266	1859	472,813	609,615
1844	229,604	223,460	1860	525,371	657,505
1845	247,369	223,672	1861	572,417	700,390
1846	201,624	189,494	1862	545,789	632,288
1847	222,013	193,688	1863	491,252	646,864
1848	234,375	245,985	1864	525,672	530,945
1849	237,805	274,235	1865	536,798	521,797
1850	245,785	245,655			

[VI]

Staple Articles, the produce of the Colony of the Cape of Good, Hope, exported in the Year 1865.

ARTICLES.	CAPE TOWN.		PORT ELIZABETH.	
	Quantity.	Value.	Quantity.	Value.
Aloes ..... cwts.	3,734	£5,142	1,655	£1,904
Copper Ore ..... tons	4,500	118,297	...	...
Corn, Grain, and Meal, viz.:				
Barley ..... qrs.	1,163	2,526	...	...
Beans and Peas ..... ,,	227	630	39	66
Bran ..... lbs.	149,257	658	...	...
Flour ..... ,,	1,702,652	17,133	7,800	339
Maize ..... qrs.	3	8	...	...
Oats ..... ,,	3,568	7,106	135	520
Wheat ..... ,,	448	1,257	...	...
Fish (Cured) ..... lbs.	2,848,760	12,748	55,029	229
Fruit (Dried) ..... ,,	788,933	11,087	125	4
Hides (Ox and Cow) ..... no.	5.060	4,713	8,514	4,581
Horses .... ,,	97	3,235	...	...
Skins—Goat ..... ,,	206,253	27,344	316,430	31,287
Sheep ..... ,,	458,247	45,782	502,082	32,643
Wine—Constantia ..... galls.	2,182	1,217	...	...
Ordinary ..... ,,	192,717	24,469	152	30
Wool—Sheep's ..... lbs,	3,278,912	186,792	28,806,831	1,453,189
Total	...	£470,144	...	1,524,792
Other Articles	...	54,428		49,240
Grand total	...	£524,572		1,574,032

Staple Articles, the produce of the Colony of the Cape of Good Hope, exported in the Year 1864.

ARTICLES.		Quantity.	Declared value.
Aloes	cwts.	5,661	7,299
Copper Ore	tons	4,323	122,602
Corn, Grain, and Meal, viz.:			
Barley	qrs.	1,467	1,830
Beans and Peas	,,	507	1,453
Bran	lbs.	438,637	1,724
Flour	,,	3,390,112	35,111
Maize	qrs.	313	472
Oats	,,	6,281	6,269
Wheat	,,	2,086	6,703
Fish (Cured)	lbs.	935,694	21,028
Fruit (Dried)	,,	1,290,407	21,601
Hides (Ox and Cow)	no.	25,464	13,882
Horses	,,	198	7,925
Skins—			
Goat	,,	450,247	55,716
Sheep	,,	891,260	76,453
Wine—			
Constantia	galls.	2,493	1,554
Ordinary	,,	175,601	24,986
Wool—Sheep's	lbs.	36,296,698	1,865,703
Total exports for year ending 31st Dec., 1864		...	£2,272,4 1
Total exports for year ending 5th Jan., 1847		...	398,304
Increase of value of exports during last 18 years		...	£1,874.107
IMPORTS.			
Declared value of imports into the colony of Cape of Good Hope for year 1864		...	£2,493,389
Ditto ditto 1845		...	1,370,328
Increase of value of imports during last 18 years		...	£1,123,061

[VII]

Financial Statistics of Natal.

The exports of the Colony of Natal for the year 1863 were of the value of £127,228 and the value of the imports £449,469. In 1843 the imports and exports were £11,712 and £1,348 respectively, and in 1853, £89,534 and £36,458.

The revenue of Natal in 1862 amounted to £109,299 and the expenditure to £113,237. In 1858, the amounts were £47,043 and £48,209.

A limited system of immigration is in operation in the Colony. In 1862, 462 immigrants arrived from Europe and 1,300 coolies from India.

A total sum of £23,022 has been spent in public works in 1863, exclusive of the sum of £165,500 for harbour improvements, provided for by a special loan.

Account of Shipping, Imports, and Exports from 1843 to 1863.

	Tonnage of Inward-bound Ships.	Value of Imports.	Tonnage of Outward-bound Ships.	Value of Exports.
1843	519	11,712	489	1,261
1853	5,015	98,534	6,138	26,694
1858	11,025	172,832	10,690	90,882
1863	23,500	465,000	22,500	165,000

Number of Sheep.

1861	74,499
1862	122,425

Sugar.

1860	Manufactured 1,505 tons,	... ...	Exported 1,218 tons,		
1861	,, 1,669 ,,	... ...	,, 764 ,,		
1862	,, 2,344 ,,	... ...	,, 846 ,,		

Number of Mills in 1861, 42; in 1862, 57.

[VIII]

Meteorology of Cape Colony.

Table giving the Fall of Rain in each Year during a period of Twenty Years, from 1842 to 1861.

Year.	Amount of Rain.	Difference from the Mean.	Year.	Amount of Rain.	Difference from the Mean.
	inches.	inches		inches	inches.
1842	26·3	+ 2·0	1852	23·2	− 1·1
1843	24·8	− 0·5	1853	21·2	− 3·1
1844	18·8	− 5·5	1854	20·0	− 4·3
1845	20·9	− 3·4	1855	24·6	+ 0·3
1846	22·5	− 1·8	1856	21·9	− 2·4
1847	22·4	− 1·9	1857	22·7	− 1·6
1848	23·2	− 1·1	1858	24·1	− 0·2
1849	24·6	+ 0·3	1859	36·7	+12·4
1850	33·5	+ 9·2	1860	29·1	+ 4·8
1851	20·3	− 4·0	1861	25·4	+ 1·1

The mean annual fall of rain is 24·3 inches.

Table showing the number of Days in each Month on which Rain fell during the Years 1752, 1858, 1859, and 1862.

Year.	January.	February.	March.	April.	May.	June.	July.	August.	September.	October.	November.	December.	Total.	Amount of Rain.
	days	days	days	days	days	days	days	days	days	days	days	days	days	inches.
1752	7	4	5	10	11	8	11	10	6	12	11	8	103	...
1858	8	5	7	8	7	8	10	14	8	10	5	3	93	24·1
1859	6	5	4	4	12	14	13	15	6	13	6	7	105	36·7
1862	4	6	4	5	8	15	14	15	10	14	8	2	105	32·0

Meteorology of Natal.

Abstract of Mean and Extreme Temperature and Rain-fall for the Port of Durban for 1858.

MONTHS.	Mean.	Highest.	Lowest.	Rain-fall in inches.	
January	74·2	93·0	57·0	3·216	Lat. 29·53
February	77·0	91 0	61 0	3·104	Long. 31·2
March	73·6	91·0	51·0	12·138	
April	70·9	89.0	47·0	4·494	
May	64 0	83.0	44·0	0·404	
June	63·6	86·0	48·0	0·959	
July	62·4	81 0	45·0	2·988	
August	65·2	81·0	49·0	3·928	
September	67·1	87·0	47·0	0·236	
October	65·9	84·0	56·0	9·915	
November	72·0	93·0	55·0	5·029	
December	74·0	92·0	55·0	7·721	
Mean for the year	69·0	87·6	51·2	5·412	

[IX—*continued.*]

Abstract of Mean and Extreme Temperature and Rain-fall at Pietermaritzburg in the Year 1858.

MONTHS.	Mean.	Highest.	Lowest.	Rain-fall in inches.	
January	68·3	93·0	52·0	2·59	Lat. 29·30
February	73·3	96·8	53·0	2·12	Long. 30·8
March	69·4	91.0	42·0	3·62	Height of place of observation
April	65·0	85·0	43·5	1·36	above the Sea, 2,055 feet.
May	59·5	79·0	38·0	0·00	
June	58·6	78·2	39·3	0·08	
July	58·1	81·0	38·0	0·14	
August	61·3	89·8	43·0	3·15	
September	64·4	90·0	42·0	0·07	
October	63·8	89·0	50·5	2·99	
November	68·2	88·5	52·4	3·81	
December	69·3	92·0	54·6	5·21	
Mean for the year	64·9	87·7	45·7	25·14	

[X]

Table showing the Distances of the principal Towns and Villages of the Cape Colony, Natal, Orange Free State, and Transvaal Republic, from the four chief Towns of the Colony.

NAME OF TOWN OR VILLAGE.	DISTANCE FROM			
	Cape Town.	Port Elizabeth.	Graham's Town.	Graaff-Reinet.
Cape Colony.				
Albert, Prince	282	300	377	230
Alice	652	143	52	154
Aliwal North	666	306	216	196
Aliwal South	270	225	380	380
Beaufort, Fort	631	131	46	142
Beaufort West	330	280	297	150
Bedford	582	150	160	102
Burghersdorp	630	296	206	170
Caledon	70	430	515	490
Calvinia	300	656	547	400
Ceres	75	463	552	405
Clanwilliam	160	573	662	515
Colesberg	540	310	245	140
Cradock	550	180	115	70
George	290	195	295	350
Graaff-Reinet	480	170	150	...
Graham's Town	585	85	...	150
Hope Town	600	395	480	225
Humansdorp	430	70	155	240
Malmesbury	45	492	577	450
Middelburg	552	222	175	72
Paarl	38	465	550	442
Port Elizabeth	500	...	85	170
Queen's Town	*640 †720	205	120	160
Richmond	450	245	225	75
Riversdale	202	298	383	444
Robertson	100	400	485	450
Seymour	655	155	70	166
Simon's Town	24	524	609	504
Somerset East	547	125	80	70
Springbokfontein	396	730	747	600
Stellenbosch	26	480	565	456
Swellendam	140	360	445	466
Tulbagh	80	458	543	423
Uitenhage	500	18	78	152
Victoria West	410	300	300	150
Wellington	45	472	557	435
Worcester	80	420	505	410

* By Beaufort West and Karroo. † By Graham's Town.

NAME OF TOWN OR VILLAGE.	DISTANCE FROM			
	Cape Town.	Port Elizabeth.	Graham's Town.	Graaff-Reinet.
King William's Town	680	165	80	230
Natal.				
Pietermaritzburg	1,136	910	826	790
Orange Free State.				
Bloemfontein	680	470	385	280
Smithfield	696	336	246	226
Transvaal.				
Mooirivierdorp	960	720	640	560
Zoutpansburg	1,300	1,100	900	980
Betjouanaland.				
Kuruman	870	560	540	390
Kolobeng	1,150	840	820	670
Lake Ngami	1,700	1,390	1,370	1,220

CAPE TOWN:
SAUL SOLOMON AND CO., STEAM PRINTING OFFICE.